MIDDLE HIGH GERMAN SERIES · VOLUME 37

Wigalois

Wirnt von Grafenberg

Wigalois

Part One: The Knight of the Wheel

---

with a word-for-word interlinear English translation

preserving the original word order

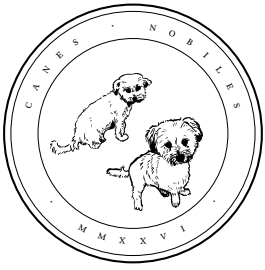


CANES NOBILES · MMXXVI

Copyright © 2026 Christopher Hench
All rights reserved

Published by Canes Nobiles
canesnobiles.com

The source text is in the public domain



Volume 37 of the Canes Nobiles Middle High German interlinear texts

The Middle High German text follows Wigalois der Ritter mit dem Rade von Wirnt von Gravenberc, herausgegeben von J. M. N. Kapteyn, Erster Band: Text (Bonn: Fritz Klopp, 1926), verses 1 to 5989

Translated and composed with AI, edited by Christopher Hench
Artwork by Esther Steves

The verses are numbered as Kapteyn numbers them, after Benecke, every fifth verse in the outer margin; his metrical marks, a dot under a letter and an occasional grave or acute accent, are printed as he prints them. The paragraphs are his; the reading sections and their English heads are this press's.

CONTENTS

I · The Girdle Offered 7
II · Gawein Overcome 25
III · Joram's Land 44
IV · Gawein's Marriage 65
V · The Stone of Virtue 84
VI · The Knight of the Wheel 102
VII · The Giants 121
VIII · The White Brachet 139
IX · The Palfrey 159
X · Count Hojir 177
XI · Hojir Sent to Arthur 197
XII · The Knight of the Tent 215
XIII · Roimunt 234
XIV · Larie 254
XV · The Burning Knights 270
XVI · The Crowned Man 289
XVII · Pfetan 305
XVIII · The Fisher's Wife 324
XIX · The Arms Found 341
XX · Gwigalois Found 355

I · THE GIRDLE OFFERED

Wirnt asks his readers for grace against false critics and names himself as a beginner. King Arthur keeps court at Karidol, where the knights earn their seats at the round table and the queen's round palace rings with music. One day no adventure comes until after noon; then a strange knight rides to the moat and offers the queen a precious girdle, hers to keep if she likes it, or else he will come back the next morning to win it by combat.

Wer hât mich guoter ûf getân?
Who has me good-one up opened?

sî ez iemen der mich kan
(if)-be it anyone who me can

beidiu lesen und verstên,
both read and understand,

der sol genâde an mir begên,
he shall grace on me do,

ob iht wandels an mir sî,
if aught of-fault on me be,

daz er mich doch lâze vrî
that he me yet let free

valscher rede: daz êret in.
of-false speech: that honors him.

ich weiz wol daz ich niene bin
I know well that I not-at-all am

geliutert und gerihtet
purified and set-right

noch sô wol getihtet
nor so well composed

michn velsche lîhte ein valscher man,
unless-me falsify easily a false man,

wan sich niemen vor in kan
for himself no-one from them can

behüeten wol, swie rehte er tuot.
guard well, however rightly he does.

dehein rede ist sô guot
no speech is so good

sine velschen si, daz weiz ich wol.
unless-they falsify it, that know I well.

swaz ich valsches von in dol,
whatever I of-falseness from them suffer,

owê, wem sol ich daz klagen?
alas, to-whom shall I that lament?

ich wilz et harte ringe tragen,
I will-it just very lightly bear,

mac ich der besten lop bejagen.
(if)-may I of-the best praise win.

Swer nâch êren sinne,
Whoever after honors strives,

triuwe und êre minne,
faith and honor loves,

der volge guoter lêre —
he follow good teaching—

daz vürdert in vil sêre —
that furthers him very greatly—

unde vlîze sich dar zuo
and apply himself there to

wie er nâch den getuo
how he after those does

den diu werlt des besten giht,
to-whom the world of-the best grants,

und die man doch dar under siht
and whom one yet there among sees

nâch gotes lône dienen hie;
for God's reward serve here;

den volge wir, wan daz sint die
those follow we, for that are they

den got hie sælde hât gegeben
to-whom God here blessedness has given

und dort ein êwiclîchez leben;
and there an eternal life;

dar nâch wir alle sulen streben.
there after we all shall strive.

Wær ich ein alsô wîser man
(If)-were I a so wise man

daz ich wol möhte — als ich doch kan —
that I well might as I yet can—

gesprechen nâch des herzen gir!
speak after the heart's desire!

leider, nû geswîchent mir
alas, now fail me

beidiu zunge und ouch der sin,
both tongue and also the wit,

dạz ich der redè niht meister bin
that I of-the speech not master am

die ich ze sprechen willen hân,
which I to speak will have,

wan daz ichz dar ûf hân getân
except that I-it there upon have done

daz ich mînen willen hie
that I my will here

gerne erzeicte — wesse ich wie —
gladly showed knew I how—

daz ez die wîsen dûhte guot.
that it to-the wise seemed good.

got gebẹ mir sin und in den muot
God give me wit and to-them the mind

daz si mirz vervâhen wol.
that they me-it take well.

ich bin noch ganzer sinne hol;
I am yet of-whole wits empty;

des sprich ich nâch kindes sit.
of-that speak I after child's manner.

erziuge ich hie iht guotes mit,
(if)-produce I here aught of-good with-it,

ob mîn geist gevüeget daz,
if my spirit fits that,

des sol man mir danken baz
for-that shall one me thank better

dan einem sinne rîchen man,
than a in-wits rich man,

der meister ist und sprechen kan:
who master is and speak can:

der hât des mêr dan ich getân.
he has of-that more than I done.

Man sol mir des genâde sagen
One shall me for-that thanks say

daz ich her in mînen tagen
that I hither in my days

mich dar ûf geflizzen hân,
myself there upon applied have,

sît ich mich guotes êrst versan,
since I myself of-good first understood,

wie ich mit mîner zungen daz
how I with my tongue that

verdiente daz die wîsen baz
should-earn that the wise better

mich mit ir gruoze hêten doch;
me with their greeting had yet;

des bin ich erlâzen noch;
of-that am I spared yet;

daz machet mîn grôz unheil
that makes my great misfortune

und mîn bœser sin ein teil.
and my wicked wit a part.

waz frumt den rîchen argen man,
what avails the rich stingy man,

der al der werlt guotes erban,
who to-all the world goods begrudged,

ob er tûsent marke
if he thousand marks

heizet in sîner arke
bids in his chest

vil vaste besliezen?
very fast lock?

wer mac des geniezen,
who may of-that enjoy,

ern wellez teilen unde geben?
unless-he will-it share and give?

an dem honige ist mir vergeben,
in the honey is me poisoned,

wand ich durch [minen] bœsen gemach
for I through [my] wicked ease

mînen schaden übersach,
my harm overlooked,

des ist mîn leben immer swach.
of-that is my life ever poor.

Si wellent daz ḍạz iht witze sîn,
They will that that no wit be,

swer rôtez golt under diu swîn
whoever red gold among the swine

werfe und edel [ge]steine:
throws and noble [gem]stones:

des vreuwent sị sich doch kleine:
of-that rejoice they themselves yet little:

si wâren ie vür daz golt
they were ever before the gold

der vil trüeben lachen holt;
to-the very muddy puddle devoted;

dâ bewellent si sich inne. —
there wallow they themselves in.—

swer guote rede minne
whoever good speech loves

und si gerne hœre sagen,
and it gladly hears told,

der sol mit zühten gedagen
he shall with breeding keep-silent

und merken sị rehte: daz ịst im guot.
and mark it rightly: that is to-him good.

si getiuret [vil] manges mannes muot,
it ennobles [much] many-a man's mind,

wand er vernimt vil lîhte dâ
for he hears very easily there

des er sich gebezzert sâ;
of-that he himself betters at-once;

daz getiuret in oft anderswâ.
that ennobles him often elsewhere.

Sô spricht vil lîhte ein tumber man
So speaks very easily a foolish man

eine rede, der si gemerken kan
a speech, who it mark can

daz si dem ze staten kumt
that it to-him to help comes

und im an sînen siten vrumt.
and him in his manners avails.

swâ von dem guoten guot geschiht,
wherever from the good good happens,

daz dunkẹt die bœsen gar enwiht,
that seems to-the wicked wholly naught,

wand in vil wênic zę herzen gât
for to-them very little to heart goes

guotiu rede und guot getât.
good speech and good deed.

si bietent lîhte d'ôren dar:
they offer easily the-ears thither:

ir muot stêt aber anders war:
their mind stands but otherwise whither:

an valsch und an bôsheit.
on falseness and on wickedness.

swaz den von mir wirt geseit,
whatever to-them from me becomes told,

daz ruofte ich gernęr in einen walt:
that would-call I more-gladly into a forest:

dâ vünde ich doch die tagalt
there would-find I yet the pleasure

daz mir mîn ôre würde erschalt.
that to-me my ear should-become resounded.

Hie vinde ich anders lônes niht
Here find I other reward nothing

wan swaz er hœret oder siht,
except whatever he hears or sees,

des spot er gerne swâ er mac;
of-that mocks he gladly wherever he may;

daz ist des valschen widerslac;
that is the false-one's counterblow;

swaz dem von mir wirt geseit
whatever to-him from me becomes told

êren oder vrümicheit,
of-honors or valor,

des nimt er vil kleine war;
of-that takes he very little heed;

er lât ez durch diu ôren gar,
he lets it through the ears wholly,

zem einen în, zem andern ûz.
at-the one in, at-the other out.

ezn vrumt in niht umb ein grûz
it avails him nothing by a grit

swaz ich im [guotes] gesagen kan,
whatever I to-him [of-good] tell can,

wand im sîn valschez herze erban
for to-him his false heart begrudged

guotes unde êren.
goods and honors.

wer mac den guot gelêren
who may him good teach

der ein valschez herze treit?
who a false heart bears?

er bewillet sich mit [der] bôsheit
he befouls himself with [the] wickedness

als sich daz swîn mit horwe tuot.
as itself the swine with muck does.

zem besten rihtet iuwern muot.
to-the best direct your mind.

nu volget mir: ez wirt iu guot.
now follow me: it becomes to-you good.

Mîn kunst diu was verborgen ie;
My art it was hidden ever;

die wold ich nu offen hie,
it would I now open here,

ob ich mit mînem munde
if I with my mouth

möhte swære stunde
might heavy hours

den liuten senfte machen,
to-the people soft make,

und von solhen sachen
and of such things

daz guot ze hœren wære.
which good to hear were.

nu wil ich iu ein mære
now will I to-you a tale

sagen, als ẹz mir ist geseit.
tell, as it to-me is told.

zeiner ganzen wârheit
to-a whole truth

trûwe ich ez niht bringen;
dare I it not bring;

wan eines wil ich dingen:
but one-thing will I stipulate:

daz ir durch iuwer hövischeit
that you through your courtliness

dem tihtær des genâde seit
to-the poet for-that thanks say

der ditze hât getihtet,
who this has composed,

mit rîmen wol berihtet,
with rhymes well set-right,

wan ditz ist sîn êrstez werc.
for this is his first work.

er heizet Wirnt von Grâvenberc.
he is-called Wirnt of Gravenberc.

der werlte ze minnen
to-the world for love

enblient erz sînen sinnen:
makes-bloom he-it with-his wits:

ir gruoz wil er gewinnen.
its greeting will he win.

Ez was hie bevor, sô man seit,
It was here before, as one tells,

ein künic, der ie nâch êren streit,
a king, who ever after honors strove,

des nam wîten ist erkant;
whose name widely is known;

Britanjâ hiez sîn lant,
Britain was-called his land,

selbe hiez er Artûs;
himself was-called he Arthur;

ze Karidôl hêt er hûs.
at Karidol had he house.

mit solhen vreuden stuont ez dô
with such joys stood it then

daz uns daz nu machet vrô
that to-us that now makes glad

sô man der herren vrümicheit
when one of-the lords' valor

uns niwan mit worten seit
to-us only with words tells

die dô des hoves pflâgen;
who then of-the court took-care;

die muosen dicke wâgen
they must often risk

durch lop den lîp: daz was ir sit.
for praise the life: that was their custom.

dâ muosen si verdienen mit
there must they earn with-it

die stat zer tavelrunde.
the place at-the round-table.

swer daz verdienen kunde
whoever that earn could

daz er der taveln reht besaz,
that he of-the table right occupied,

den hêt man immer deste baz.
him held one ever the better.

ouch ist ê oft vil geseit
also is before often much told

von der herren vrümicheit
of the lords' valor

und von des küniges milte,
and of the king's generosity,

den des niht bevilte
to-whom of-that nothing irked

swaz er êren möhte bejagen;
whatever he of-honors might win;

des muoz man von im immer sagen;
of-that must one of him ever tell;

beidiu sîn nam und sîn lant
both his name and his land

diu sint manigem erkant
they are to-many-a-one known

der ir dewederz nie gesach.
who of-them neither never saw.

von dem mir nie guot geschach
from whom to-me never good happened

dem wil ich doch sprechen guot,
of-him will I yet speak good,

ob er daz beste gerne tuot;
if he the best gladly does;

daz was von kinde ie mîn muot.
that was from child ever my mind.

Als ichz vernomen hân,
As I-it heard have,

sô lac daz hûs an einer plân.
so lay the house on a plain.

ein grôz fôreis dar an stiez.
a great forest there on bordered.

der künic daz vil selten liez
the king that very seldom left
ern rite baneken darin.
unless-he rode for-pleasure there-in.
ez was der rîter gewin
it was the knights' gain
und ir aller bestez spil
and of-them all best sport
daz si âventiure vil
that they adventure much
dâ zallen zîten vunden.
there at-all times found.
daz jagen mit den hunden
the hunting with the hounds
was dâ under wîlen grôz.
was there at times great.
durch den walt ein wazzer vlôz
through the forest a water flowed
vür daz hûs an einer sît;
before the house on one side;
daz was eben unde wît,
that was level and wide,
besetzet vil hêrlîche
set very splendidly
mit mangem vürsten rîche,
with many-a prince rich,
die alle gehûset hêten drin.
who all housed had there-in.
ez was der geste gewin
it was the guests' gain
daz si alle umb êre striten;
that they all for honor strove;
deheine vrümcheit si vermiten,
no valor they avoided,

daz beste sị alle tâten.
the best they all did.

daz hûs was wol berâten
the house was well provided

mit vil grôzer rîcheit,
with very great richness,

als uns diu âventiure seit;
as us the adventure tells;

ir guot was mangem man bereit.
their goods were to-many-a man ready.

Des küniges hûs enmitten lac.
The king's house in-the-middle lay.

der, nâch dem alten site, pflac
he, after the old custom, took-care

die rîter alle enpfâhen wol;
the knights all to-receive well;

er was reiner tugent vol,
he was of-pure virtue full,

gewizzen unde stæte;
wise and steadfast;

âne valsche ræte
without false counsels

minnẹt er iegelîchen man;
loved he each man;

daz was hêrlîch getân.
that was splendidly done.

als ez von im geschriben stêt,
as it of him written stands,

wol tûsent rîter er hêt
well thousand knights he had

ze gesinde tägelîche;
as household daily;

der iegelîcher was sô rîche
of-whom each was so rich

an rossẹn und an gewande,
in horses and in clothing,

an bürgen und an lande,
in castles and in land,

daz im nihtes gebrast;
that to-him nothing lacked;

dar zuo hêt er mangen gast,
there to had he many-a guest,

den er von sîner hant beriet;
whom he from his hand provided;

von im niemẹn ungetrœstet schiet;
from him no-one uncomforted parted;

er lôstẹ den recken dicke ir pfant;
he redeemed for-the warriors often their pledge;

des ist noch sîn nam erkant
for-that is yet his name known

von sîner milte übẹr älliu lant.
for his generosity over all lands.

Ein palas hêt diu künigîn
A palace had the queen

daz was märmelsteinîn,
that was of-marble,

gezieret wol begarwe,
adorned well wholly,

von vier hande varwe:
of four kinds of-color:

rôt, brûn, weitîn und gel;
red, brown, woad-blue and yellow;

daz hûs daz was sinwel,
the house it was round,

beliewet umb und umbe wol.
arbored about and about well.

rîcher vrouwen was ez vol;
of-rich ladies was it full;

vil manic maget sûberlîch
very many-a maiden neat

dienten aller tägelîch
served of-all daily

der rîchen küniginne.
the rich queen.

ouch hêt si dar inne
also had she there in

rîcheit und vreude vil.
richness and joy much.

aller hande seitspil
of-all kinds string-music

die juncvrouwen kunden;
the young-ladies knew;

daz hôrte man zallen stunden
that heard one at-all hours

in den gewelben schellen;
in the vaults resound;

der kleinen hunde bellen
the little dogs' barking

dar inne vaste klingen;
there in loudly ring;

mangen vogel singen
many-a bird sing

in den liewen über al:
in the arbors over all:

galander unde nahtegal
larks and nightingale

iegelîcher sîne stimme sanc.
each its voice sang.

die vrouwen dûhte diu wîle unlanc;
to-the ladies seemed the while short;

des sagten si dem künige danc.
for-that said they to-the king thanks.

Nu hêt der künic einen sit —
Now had the king a custom—

dâ was sîn hof getiuret mit —
there was his court ennobled with-it—

daz er ze tische nie gesaz
that he at table never sat

des morgens, ê er eteswaz
of-the morning, before he something

von âventiure hêt vernomen.
of adventure had heard.

eins tages was ez alsô komen, —
one day was it so come,—

daz doch selten dâ geschach —
which yet seldom there happened—

daz man niht âventiure sach
that one no adventure saw

unze wol nâch mittem tage;
until well after mid day;

daz was des ingesindes klage;
that was the household's lament;

si stuonden an der warte hie.
they stood on the watchtower here.

diu edel küniginne gie
the noble queen went

von den rîtern ûf ir sal.
from the knights up-to her hall.

dô sach si bî der mûr zetal
then saw she by the wall down-below

einen schœnen rîter haben;
a handsome knight halt;

der was geriten an den graben.
he was ridden to the moat.

der vrouwen was er unbekant.
to-the lady was he unknown.

ein sper vuort er in der hant,
a spear carried he in the hand,

von scharlachen was er gekleit,
in scarlet was he clad,

sîn pfärt was rôt daz er reit,
his palfrey was red that he rode,

sîn hâr gemischet unde reit.
his hair mixed and curly.

Als er die küniginne sach,
When he the queen saw,

vil gezogenlîche er dô sprach
very courteously he then spoke

‘ûf gnâde bin ich komen her;
‘upon grace am I come hither;

nu gewert mich, vrouwe, des ich ger,
now grant me, lady, what I desire,

durch wîplîche güete:
for womanly goodness:

sô ist mîn gemüete
so is my mind

geprîset immer mêre;
praised ever more;

nu enpfâhet durch iuwẹr êre
now receive for your honor

mîn bet genædiclîche,
my request graciously,

daz iuch diu Sælde rîche.’
that you the Blessedness enrich.’

‘nu sprechet, rîter, wes ir gert.’
‘now speak, knight, what you desire.’

‘vrouwe, daz ich werde gewert.’
‘lady, that I become granted.’

‘nû saget mir doch: wes?’
‘now tell me yet: what?’

‘vrouwè, niwan des:
‘lady, only this:

daz ir von mir geruochet nemen
that you from me deign to-take

einen gürtel, der wol möhte gezemen
a girdle, which well might befit

al der werlte vrouwen;
all the world’s ladies;

den lâz ich iuch schouwen.
it let I you behold.

behaltet in unz morgen vruo.
keep it until morning early.

trage iuch iuwer muot dar zuo,
(if)-bears you your mind there to,

sô habẹt iu’n zeigen von mir;
so have to-you-it as-own from me;

sî ab, vrouwe, daz ir
be-it but, lady, that you

den gürtel niht behalten welt,
the girdle not keep will,

sô wil ich in als ein helt
so will I it as a hero

morgen holen hie durch strît
tomorrow fetch here through strife

ze rehter âventiure zît;
at right adventure’s time;

od ich bin der hie tôt gelît.’
or I am he here dead lies.’

The queen takes the girdle, and it gives her joy and wisdom, but Gawein counsels her to give it back. Next morning the stranger comes in splendid arms; she returns the girdle, and he challenges the court. He unhorses Keii, Didones, Segremors, Miljanz, and the rest. Gawein rides after him, but the girdle's power defeats him, and he is led away captive while Arthur is out hunting.

Diu vrouwe sprach 'daz si getân;
The lady spoke 'that be done;

ich wil âne bœsen wân
I will without wicked thought

von iu die gâbe enpfâhen hie;
from you the gift receive here;

alsô doch — ich sagiu, wie —
so yet I tell-you, how—

daz ich iuch, rîter, niht entwer:
that I you, knight, not refuse:

ir sult morgen komen her
you shall tomorrow come hither

und holt den gürtel; daz ist mîn rât.
and fetch the girdle; that is my counsel.

ich schaffez wol daz ez sô ergât
I arrange-it well that it so goes

daz ir behaltet iuwer leben.
that you keep your life.

nu wizzet, ich hân iu wol gegeben
now know, I have to-you well given

daz ich dáz tuon durch iuwer bet
that I that do for your request

mit willen hie an dirre stet
with will here in this place

daz ich durch man ê nie getet.'
which I for man before never did.'

Den gürtel leite er ûf daz sper;
The girdle laid he upon the spear;

mit guotem willen reicht er
with good will reached he

der vrouwen sîne gâbe dô;
to-the lady his gift then;

er neic ir unde sprach alsô
he bowed to-her and spoke so

'nu lât mich iuwer hulde haben;
'now let me your favor have;

ich wil rîten von dem graben
I will ride from the moat

wider zuo dem walde.'
back to the forest.'

dô reit er alsô balde
then rode he so quickly

daz sîn dâ niemen war genam
that of-him there no-one heed took

unz er ze sînen knappen kam.
until he to his squires came.

die wârn mit grôzen vreuden dâ;
they were with great joys there;

si sâhen in zuo rîten sâ.
they saw him to ride at-once.

nu lâze wir den rîter sîn.
now let we the knight be.

den gürtel hât diu künigîn;
the girdle has the queen;

der rieme was alsô getân
the strap was so made

daz ich iu niht gesagen kan
that I to-you not tell can

welher hande er wære;
of-what kind it were;

er was ninder lære
it was nowhere empty

von gesteine noch von golde;
of gems nor of gold;

swer einen wünschen solde,
whoever one wish should,

dern würde nimmer alsô guot.
it would-become never so good.

der küniginne riet ir muot
to-the queen counseled her mind

daz si den gürtel umbe bant;
that she the girdle about bound;

dô hêt diu vrouwe sâ zehant
then had the lady straightway at-once

vreude unde wîsheit:
joy and wisdom:

sine truobte deheiner slahte leit,
her troubled of-no kind sorrow,

die sprâche kunde si alle wol,
the languages knew she all well,

ir herze daz was vreuden vol,
her heart it was of-joys full,

swaz spils man dâ begunde,
whatever play one there began,

si dûhte des wie siz kunde;
her seemed of-that how she-it knew;

deheiner kunst ir niht gebrast.
of-any art to-her nothing lacked.

si dûhte daz der selbe gast
her seemed that the same guest

wol möhte sîn ein rîcher künic;
well might be a rich king;

er dûhte sị biderbe unde vrümic
he seemed to-her worthy and valiant

als ez wol an dem gürtel schein.
as it well in the girdle appeared.

si schuof daz ir her Gâwein
she arranged that to-her lord Gawein

würde brâht ûf den sal.
should-become brought up-to the hall.

von den liewen gie si zetal
from the arbors went she down

wider sitzen an ir stat;
back to-sit at her place;

die vrouwen sị alle sitzen bat.
the ladies she all sit bade.

her Gâwein kom als si gebôt.
lord Gawein came as she commanded.

ern vorhte deheiner slahte nôt;
he feared of-no kind distress;

des gelac vil manger von im tôt.
of-that lay very many-a-one from him dead.

Diu vrouwe in zuo ir sitzen hiez.
The lady him to her sit bade.

si wessẹ wol daz er niht enliez
she knew well that he not left-off

swes si in bat ern tæte daz;
whatever she him begged unless-he did that;

ir geviel sîn vuore deste baz.
to-her pleased his conduct the better.

si sprach ‘helt, nu râtet mir,
she spoke ‘hero, now counsel me,

wand ich erkenne wol daz ir
for I know well that you

habt sô tugenthaften muot
have so virtuous mind

daz ir nimmer missetuot:
that you never do-amiss:

daz hât man ofte an iu gesehen.
that has one often in you seen.

ein âventiure ist mir geschehen,
an adventure is to-me happened,

die wil ich iuch wizzen lân;
it will I you know let;

ich bedarf wol iuwers râtes dran.'
I need well your counsel there-in.'

waz welt ir der rede mê?
what will you of-the speech more?

si sagt im als ich iu ê.
she told him as I to-you before.

als er von ir hêt vernomen
when he from her had heard

wie der rîter dar was komen
how the knight there was come

und wiez umḅ den gürtel stuont,
and how-it about the girdle stood,

dô tet er als die wîsen tuont:
then did he as the wise do:

eine wîle er swîgende saz.
a while he silent sat.

mit bedâhtem muote sprach er daz
with considered mind spoke he that

'nu wizzet, vrouwe hêre,
'now know, lady noble,

ez wær wider iuwer êre
it were against your honor

und würde ein bœsez mære,
and would-become a wicked tale,

swie guot der gürtel wære,
however good the girdle were,

375 und engæbet ir in im niht wider.
and should-give you it to-him not back.

vrouwe, irn sult niht nider
lady, you shall not down

lâzen iuwern hôhen muot
let your high spirit

durch deheiner slahte guot:
for of-any kind goods:

ir sît dar zuo ze rîche;
you are there for too rich;

380 und wizzet wærlîche:
and know truly:

swie sîn dar nâch werde rât,
however of-it there after become counsel,

kumt er morgen, als er hât
(if)-comes he tomorrow, as he has

gelobet, daz man in bestât.'
promised, that one him withstands.'

Diu rede hêt ein ende hie.
The speech had an end here.

385 her Gâwein zem gesinde gie
lord Gawein to-the household went

und sagt in die geschiht dô;
and told them the event then;

des wurdẹn die rîter alle vrô.
of-that became the knights all glad.

des andern morgens kom durch strît
of-the other morning came for strife

ze rehter âventiure zît
at right adventure's time

der vil tugenthafte gast
the very virtuous guest

gewâfent daz im nihts gebrast.
armed that to-him nothing lacked.

ern vorhte deheiner slahte nôt.
he feared of-no kind distress.

ein ravît reit er daz was rôt,
a charger rode he that was red,

daz gie ze sprunge schône.
which went at gallop nicely.

sîn zimier was ein krône;
his crest was a crown;

ein grôz rubîn dar inne lac;
a great ruby there in lay;

diu krône lûhte als der tac
the crown shone as the day

von golde und von gesteine.
of gold and of gems.

sîn angest diu was kleine.
his fear it was small.

sîn wâfenroc von borten was;
his surcoat of braid was;

ein samît grüene alsam ein gras
a samite green as a grass

was ze der banier gesniten.
was for the banner cut.

sus kom der rîter dar geriten.
thus came the knight there ridden.

ûf sînem schilte lac ein ar;
upon his shield lay an eagle;

der was von rôtem golde gar,
it was of red gold wholly,

daz ander von lazûre.
the other of azure.

sus reit er zuo der mûre,
thus rode he to the wall,

dâ er die küniginne vant.
where he the queen found.

sînen helm er abe bant
his helm he off bound

und sazte in ûf den satelbogen.
and set it upon the saddle-bow.

er was höfsch und wol gezogen.
he was courtly and well bred.

sin houbet daz entwâfent er,
his head it unarmed he,

an die mûre leint er sîn sper.
against the wall leaned he his spear.

dô er die küniginne ersach,
when he the queen saw,

mit grôzen zühten er dô sprach
with great breeding he then spoke

‘edle vrouwe, hœret mich
‘noble lady, hear me

durch iuwer güete; des ger ich.
for your goodness; that desire I.

wert mich mit gnædeclîchem sit
grant me with gracious manner

eins dinges, des ich iuch bit:
one thing, which I you beg:

daz ir die gâbe behaltet hie.’
that you the gift keep here.’

si sprach ‘rîter, des enwart mir nie
she spoke ‘knight, of-that became to-me never

ze muote, daz geloubet mir;
in mind, that believe me;

edel rîter, jâne súlt ir
noble knight, indeed shall you

solher dinge̥ niht harte gern
of-such things not very desire

der man iuch niht mac gewern;
which one you not may grant;

i̥ch wil der rede von iu enbern.
I will the speech from you forgo.

Herre, nemt den gürtel wider.’
Lord, take the girdle back.’

si liez in schône vallen nider
she let it nicely fall down

von der mûre ûf sîn knie;
from the wall upon his knee;

mit der hant ern ouch enpfie.
with the hand he-it also received.

als er die vrouwen zürnen sach,
when he the lady be-angry saw,

der rîter offenlîche sprach
the knight openly spoke

‘swer ie durch hövischeit gestreit,
‘whoever ever for courtliness strove,

der gewinne in mit manheit
he win it with manhood

an mir: des hât er êre;
from me: of-that has he honor;

od ichn wil nimmer mêre
or I will never more

des hoves wort gesprechen;
of-the court word speak;

sol ich niht zebrechen
(if)-shall I not break

mîn sper vor der porte hie,
my spear before the gate here,

sôn geschach hie âventiure nie.'
so happened here adventure never.'

der vrouwen neic er sâ zehant.
to-the lady bowed he straightway at-once.

sînen helm er ûf bant
his helm he up bound

und reit vermezzenlîche dan
and rode boldly away

vür daz hûs ûf die plân.
before the house onto the plain.

die von der tavelrunde
they of the round-table

sprâchen mit einem munde
spoke with one mouth

'wâ nu schilt unde sper!
'where now shield and spear!

harnasch und ors her!'
harness and steed hither!'

und swer ê bereit wart,
and whoever before ready became,

der was der êrste an die vart.
he was the first on the way.

Kaiî den schilt ze halse nam;
Keii the shield to neck took;

mit zorne er ûz ze velde kam:
with anger he out to field came:

er wolde bejagen den gewin.
he would win the gain.

mit grôzen schanden vlôs er in,
with great disgraces lost he it,

wand in der rîter niderstach —
for him the knight down-stabbed—

daz ez diu küniginne sach —
that it the queen saw—

von dem orse ûf daz gras.
from the steed onto the grass.

Didones der næhste was;
Didones the next was;

der rief in rîterlîche an;
he called him knightly on;

dô kêrte er als ein küene man
then turned he as a bold man

und stach in von dem rosse nider.
and stabbed him from the horse down.

gegẹn dem walde kêrter wider.
toward the forest turned-he back.

Segremors erreit in dô;
Segremors overtook him then;

mit dem teilt er den gürtel sô
with him shared he the girdle so

daz er mit leide dẹn langen tac
that he with sorrow the long day

betoubet ûf dem velde lac.
stunned upon the field lay.

Miljanz, der tugentrîche man,
Miljanz, the virtue-rich man,

der reit in rîterlîche an;
he rode him knightly at;

den stach er nider ûf die plân;
him stabbed he down onto the plain;

daz was im selten ê getân.
that was to-him seldom before done.

ichn kan si niht genennen gar,
I can them not name wholly,

wan daz diu tugenthafte schar
except that the virtuous troop

von der tavelrunde
of the round-table

in vil kurzer stunde
in very short hour

wart dâ sigelôs ersehen;
became there victoryless seen;

owê, wie mohtę daz ie geschehen!
alas, how might that ever happen!

alle die nâch dem rîter riten
all who after the knight rode

die kundę er des vil wol erbiten
them could he of-that very well entreat

daz si in liezen rîten dan.
that they him let ride away.

an dem velde lac manic man
on the field lay many-a man

der des ungewon was;
who of-that unaccustomed was;

bedecket was daz grüene gras
covered was the green grass

mit den schilten eteswâ;
with the shields somewhere;

diu ros liefen ledic dâ,
the horses ran free there,

als ein stuot wær ûz geslagen;
as-if a stud were out driven;

man sach da mangen în tragen
one saw there many-a-one in carry

der ê schônę was ûz geriten.
who before nicely was out ridden.

si möhtẹn in gerne hân vermiten,
they might him gladly have avoided,

wan si dâ schande von im liten.
for they there disgrace from him suffered.

Nu reit der rîter sâ zehant
Now rode the knight straightway at-once

dâ er sîne knappen vant.
where he his squires found.

die wâren sîns gelückes vrô;
they were of-his luck glad;

mit vreudẹn enpfiengen si in dô.
with joys received they him then.

den helm man im abe bant;
the helm one from-him off bound;

selbe schut èr sîn îsengwant
self poured he his iron-clothing

in den schilt zuo im dâ.
into the shield by him there.

zwêne knappen hiez er sâ
two squires bade he at-once

an daz fôreis rîten.
to the forest ride.

er sprach ‘ir sult dâ bîten
he spoke ‘you shall there wait

unz ir daz vil rehte erspehet
until you that very rightly spy

daz ir einen rîter sehet
that you a knight see

von dem hûse rîten her;
from the house ride hither;

den erkenne ich wol, wan daz ist der
him know I well, for that is he

dem an deheinem strîte nie
to-whom in any strife never

von sîner zagheit missegie;
from his cowardice miscarried;

gegẹn dem wil ich ruowen hie.
against him will I rest here.

Die knappen riten vür den walt.
The squires rode before the forest.

ir vreude diu was manicvalt.
their joy it was manifold.

si warten, als er in gebôt.
they watched, as he them commanded.

dô hôrten si vil grôze nôt
then heard they very great distress

von der mässenîe klage.
of the household's lament.

der hof enwart nie vor dem tage
the court became never before the day

geletzet alsô sêre.
grieved so sorely.

diu künịgîn Ginovêre
the queen Ginover

saz mit grôzem jâmer hie:
sat with great grief here:

irn geschach dâ vor sô leide nie.
to-her happened there before so sorrowful never.

nû wâfent sich her Gâwein,
now arms himself lord Gawein,

der ie in rîters êren schein.
who ever in knight's honors shone.

ûf sîn ors saz er.
upon his steed sat he.

man reichte im schilt unde sper.
one reached to-him shield and spear.

sus reit er vür daz bürgetor;
thus rode he before the castle-gate;

dâ sâhen in die knappen vor.
there saw him the squires before.

er reit stätelîche dan.
he rode steadily away.

ze strîte was er ein wîse man,
for strife was he a wise man,

wan er hêt ofte vil gestriten,
for he had often much fought,

durch manheit ûf den lîp geriten.
for manhood upon the life ridden.

er stapfet sanfte, im was niht gâch.
he stepped gently, to-him was not hasty.

daz ingesinde sach im nâch
the household looked to-him after

und bat got sînes lîbes pflegen.
and begged God of-his life take-care.

si hêten sich sîn gar bewegen,
they had themselves of-him wholly given-up,

wan daz im nie misselanc.
except that to-him never miscarried.

daz gevilde daz was harte lanc;
the field it was very long;

daz reit er gegen dem walde nider.
that rode he toward the forest down.

die zwêne knappen îlten wider
the two squires hastened back

und sagten im er kæme dâ.
and told him he came there.

der rîter hiez sich wâfen sâ.
the knight bade himself arm at-once.

den gürtel gurter umbe sich;
the girdle girded-he about himself;

wan durch sîn kraft, so dûhte mich
except through its power, so seemed to-me

im wær dâ misselungen.
to-him were there miscarried.

diu ors ze samne sprungen
the steeds to together sprang

dô si ein ander sâhen.
when they one another saw.

si begunden vaste gâhen;
they began fast to-hasten;

diu ors nâmens mit den sporn;
the steeds took-they with the spurs;

ir ietweder hêt erkorn
of-them each had chosen

den andern underz kinnebein;
the other under-the jawbone;

dô huop sich under in zwein
then raised itself between them two

ein harte schœniu rîterschaft,
a very beautiful knighthood,

wan ir ietweders schaft
for of-them each's shaft

brast ze mangen stücken;
burst into many pieces;

dô muosen si zücken
then must they draw

diu swert von den sîten;
the swords from the sides;

hie huop sich schœnez strîten
here raised itself beautiful fighting

enzwischen in beiden.
between them both.

wer solde si dâ scheiden,
who should them there part,

sît dâ niemen bî in was?
since there no-one by them was?

sị erbeizten nider ûf daz gras.
they dismounted down onto the grass.

diu ors enhêtẹn in niht getân;
the steeds had to-them nothing done;

si liezẹn über sich selben gân.
they let over themselves self go.

si hêten beide ganze kraft
they had both whole strength

und vâhten ouch mit meisterschaft,
and fought also with mastery,

wan si kundenz beide wol.
for they could-it both well.

mir ịst leit, daz ichz sagen sol
to-me is sorrow, that I-it tell shall

daz dem herren Gâwein ie
that to-the lord Gawein ever

an dem strîte missegie;
in the strife miscarried;

doch wil ich im des prîses jehen:
yet will I to-him the prize grant:

im wære dẹs lasters niht geschehen
to-him were the disgrace not happened

wan durch den gürtel, den er truoc:
except through the girdle, which he wore:

der steine kraft in nider sluoc;
the stones' power him down struck;

dâ von der gast den sic gewan.
there from the guest the victory won.

er wær sîn anders gar erlân.
he were of-it otherwise wholly spared.

des wart her Gâwein vil unvrô.
of-that became lord Gawein very unglad.

der edel rîter vienc in dô;
the noble knight captured him then;

in sîn gezelt zôch er in;
into his tent drew he him;

daz was ein rîterlîch gewin.
that was a knightly gain.

owê, daz dem herren Gâwein ie
alas, that to-the lord Gawein ever

von deheinem manne missegie:
from any man miscarried:

wan bezzer rîter dern wart nie.
for better knight than-he became never.

Als diu sicherheit wart getân,
When the surety became done,

dô reit der gevangen man
then rode the captive man

mit dem herren durch den walt.
with the lord through the forest.

diu klage was vil manicvalt
the lament was very manifold

dâ ze hovè von der geschiht.
there at court from the event.

künc Artûs was da heime niht:
king Arthur was there at-home not:

er was ûz an daz gejeit.
he was out at the hunt.

dô er kom, dô was im leit
when he came, then was to-him sorrow

und truobet sêre sînen muot,
and troubled sorely his mind,

daz sô manic rîter guot
that so many-a knight good

geschendet was von einem man.
disgraced was by one man.

ouch was des ingesindes wân
also was the household's belief

daz her Gâwein wære erslagen;
that lord Gawein were slain;

daz begundens alle klagen.
that began-they all to-lament.

sîn schandẹ was im doch sô geschehen
his disgrace was to-him yet so happened

daz ir deheiner sị hêt ersehen:
that of-them none it had seen:

dâ von was ez in unkunt.
there from was it to-them unknown.

ezn kæme ouch nimmer vür mîn munt,
it would-come also never before my mouth,

hêt mirz ein knappe niht geseit
had me-it a squire not told

zeiner ganzen wârheit,
to-a whole truth,

wider den ich alle wîle streit.
against whom I all while strove.

The stranger gives Gawein the girdle and leads him twelve days through a flowering land to his castle, saying that his land runs from the forest to the sea. Gawein is bathed and clothed in brocade and brought to the queen and to a maiden, the most beautiful he has ever seen. Her clothing, girdle, mantle, and beauty are described at length.

Nu riten die zwên küene man
Now rode the two bold men

mit vil grôzen vreuden dan
with very great joys away

und kômen in ein wilde lant.
and came into a wild land.

der herre dẹn gürtel abe bant
the lord the girdle off bound

als er die vreise vor im sach.
when he the peril before him saw.

zem herren Gâwein er dô sprach
to-the lord Gawein he then spoke

'herre und lieber [gẹ]selle,
'lord and dear [com]panion,

seht ir daz gevelle
see you the falls

und die steinwende?
and the rock-walls?

daz ist âne wende
that is without turning

wirn müezen rîten dar an.
unless-we must ride there on.

nu nemt den gürtel den ich hân;
now take the girdle which I have;

behalt in unz an iuwern tôt
keep it until to your death

und sît sicher vor aller nôt:
and be safe from all distress:

wan daz ir siglôs sît ersehen
for that you victoryless are seen

daz ist von sîner kraft geschehen.
that is from its power happened.

ichn zel mirz ze dẹheiner vrümicheit,
I count me-it to no valor,

wand ir habt grôze manheit
for you have great manhood

begangen allez iuwer leben;
performed all your life;

man hât iu ie den prîs gegeben
one has to-you ever the prize given

an rehter rîterschefte.
in right knighthood.

daz mir von mîner krefte
that to-me from my strength

diu êre sî gevallen hie,
the honor be fallen here,

den gelouben gẹwan ich nie,
the belief got I never,

wan daz ist ie âne wân
for that is ever without doubt

ezn habe der steine kraft getân.
unless-it have the stones' power done.

iun mac nû nimmer missegên;
to-you may now never miscarry;

ân angest müget ir bestên
without fear may you withstand

swaz vreise ir in der werlte welt.'
whatever peril you in the world will.'

mit triuwen neic im dô der helt;
with faith bowed to-him then the hero;

der gâbe wart er harte vrô.
of-the gift became he very glad.

er gnâdet im und gurte dô
he thanked him and girded then

den gürtẹl under sîn îsengwant.
the girdle under his iron-clothing.

dâ von enpfienc er zehant
there from received he at-once

vil grôze sterke und manheit.
very great strength and manhood.

ûf den berc er dô reit
up the mountain he then rode

nâch dem herren in ein lant.
after the lord into a land.

ich wæn ie iemen würde erkant
I believe ever anyone would-become known

ein lant sô vreuden rîche:
a land so of-joys rich:

ez blúot allèz gelîche,
it bloomed all alike,

bluomen unde boume.
flowers and trees.

wie er in einem troume
as-if he in a dream

wære, des bedûhte in sâ.
were, of-that seemed to-him at-once.

der vogel sanc was michel dâ.
the birds' song was great there.

daz lant gar âne liute was:
the land wholly without people was:

niwan bluomen unde gras
only of-flowers and grass

der was daz gevilde vol.
of-that was the field full.

diu ougen weide tet im wol.
the eyes' pasture did him well.

swie ichz doch kurzlîche sage,
however I-it yet briefly tell,

si wârn geriten zwelf tage.
they were ridden twelve days.

des drîzehenden morgens vruo
of-the thirteenth morning early

kômen si geriten zuo
came they ridden to

einem wazzer daz was breit.
a water which was broad.

der rîter ez zetal reit
the knight it down-along rode

durch einen wünniclichen walt;
through a delightful forest;

der was ze vreuden wol gestalt
it was for joys well shaped

von loube und von gesange.
of foliage and of song.

den riten si unlange
it rode they not-long

unz er eine strâze vant;
until he a road found;

diu wîste in in sîn eigen lant.
it directed him into his own land.

die reise hêt er wol bewant.
the journey had he well spent.

Mit mæren vertriben si den tac.
With tales passed they the day.

nu sâhen si wâ vor in lac
now saw they where before them lay

ein burc harte veste,
a castle very firm,

diu schœnest und diu beste
the most-beautiful and the best

die si ie gesâhen;
which they ever saw;

der begundens nâhen.
to-it began-they to-near.

ein wîtiu stat lac vor dem tor,
a wide town lay before the gate,

dâ wâren tiefe graben vor.
there were deep ditches before.

ein boumgart umb daz hûs lac:
an orchard about the house lay:

den bevridet ein vestez hac.
it enclosed a firm hedge.

sus riten si durch die stat.
thus rode they through the town.

den herren Gâwein dô bat
the lord Gawein then bade

der künic willekomen sîn.
the king welcome be.

er sprach 'ditze lant ist mîn
he spoke 'this land is mine

von dem walde unz an daz mer,
from the forest until to the sea,

und möhte ich ûz komen mit her
and (if)-might I out come with host

vür die berge, geloubet daz:
before the mountains, believe that:

nie dehein künìc besaz
never any king possessed

sîn lant sô gwalticlîche —
his land so mightily—

ich betwüngẹ wol älliu rîche.'
I would-compel well all realms.'

sus reit er vür daz bürgetor;
thus rode he before the castle-gate;

dâ stuonden edel knappen vor,
there stood noble squires before,

rîter unde knehte,
knights and servants,

die in nâch sînem rehte
who him after his right

enpfiengen küniclîche.
received kingly.

er nam geselliclîche
he took companionably

den herren Gâwein bî der hant.
the lord Gawein by the hand.

den helm man im abe bant
the helm one from-him off bound

und vuorte in an guot gemach.
and led him to good comfort.

ze sînen knappen er dô sprach
to his squires he then spoke

'nu badet dẹn rîter schône
'now bathe the knight nicely

daz ichs iu immer lône.'
that I-it to-you ever reward.'

abe schut èr sîn îsengwant.
off poured he his iron-clothing.

si vuorten in enwec zehant
they led him away at-once

und batten in rîterlîche.
and bathed him knightly.

der wirt der was rîche;
the host he was rich;

daz wol an dem gesinde schein.
that well in the household appeared.

sich kleite der herre Gâwein
himself clothed the lord Gawein

mit wîzer lînwæte;
with white linen;

ein juncvrouwe in næte
a young-lady him sewed

in einen roc pfellîn;
into a coat of-brocade;

mit einem pelze härmîn
with a fur ermine

was er gefurrieret;
was it lined;

sus wart er gezieret.
thus became he adorned.

her Gâwein was ein schœne man.
lord Gawein was a handsome man.

des selben pfelles leite er an
of-the same brocade laid he on

einen mantel, der was wît.
a mantle, which was wide.

nu kom ein bote — des was zît, —
now came a messenger of-that was time,—

der hiez in ûf ezzen gân;
who bade him up to-eat go;

der künic wolde ins niht erlân
the king would him-it not spare

ern müese sîn gemazze sîn;
unless-he must his table-companion be;

ze kemenâten az diu künigîn:
in chamber ate the queen:

daz schuof der wirt durch sîn gemach.
that arranged the host for his comfort.

an disen dingen er wol sach
in these things he well saw

daz sîn wille und sîn muot
that his will and his mind

was reine unde guot:
was pure and good:

er tet im als man vriunden tuot.
he did to-him as one to-friends does.

Man gap im guote spîse dâ.
One gave him good food there.

dô man gaz, dô fuorte in sâ
when one ate, then led him at-once

der künic zuo den vrouwen;
the king to the ladies;

die mohte er gerne schouwen.
them might he gladly behold.

als er in den sal gie,
as he into the hall went,

diu küniginne in enpfie,
the queen him received,

dar nâch ein sô schœniu maget
there after a so beautiful maiden

daz ninder lebte, sô man saget,
that nowhere lived, as one says,

ir gelîche bî der zît;
her like by the time;

si was benamen âne strît
she was assuredly without dispute

diu schœnest die er ie gesach;
the most-beautiful whom he ever saw;

des prîses ir diu werlt jach.
of-the prize to-her the world granted.

si enzunde im herze unde muot.
she kindled to-him heart and mind.

in dûhte daz wesen bî ir guot,
him seemed that to-be by her good,

wan dâ was schœne unde jugent,
for there was beauty and youth,

gewizzen unde ganziu tugent,
discretion and whole virtue,

geburt unde sinne;
birth and wits;

si möhte wol keiserinne
she might well empress

von ir tugent sîn gewesen.
for her virtue be been.

wer möhte ouch noch vor ir genesen
who might also yet before her survive

diu sô schœne wære?
who so beautiful were?

wir sulen guotiu mære
we shall good tales

von den reinen wîben sagen
of the pure women tell

und ir leit mit leide klagen,
and their sorrow with sorrow lament,

die sich mit zühten kunnen tragen.
who themselves with breeding can bear.

Als uns diu âventiure seit,
As us the adventure tells,

sô was diu juncvrouwe gekleit
so was the young-lady clad

nâch ir rehte harte wol,
after her right very well,

als ein edel maget sol.
as a noble maiden shall.

si truoc einen roc wîten,
she wore a coat wide,

von zwein samîten
of two samites

gesniten vil gelîche,
cut very alike,

eben unde rîche;
even and rich;

der einę was grüene alsam ein gras,
the one was green as a grass,

der ander rôter varwe was,
the other of-red color was,

mit golde wol gezieret.
with gold well adorned.

der was gefurrieret
it was lined

mit vil grôzem vlîze:
with very great diligence:

herme vil wîze
ermine very white

hêt er bedecket;
had it covered;

der pelz was gestrecket
the fur was stretched

neben dem rockę gelîche.
beside the coat alike.

gerigen meisterlîche
pleated masterfully

ein hemde was dar under;
a shift was there under;

des nam den rîter wunder
of-that took the knight wonder

daz ez sô rehte lûter was:
that it so right clear was:

als ein liehtez spiegelglas
as a bright mirror-glass

was daz selbe hemde;
was the same shift;

ez dûhte in harte vremde
it seemed to-him very strange

daz ez sô kleine mohte sîn;
that it so fine might be;

ez was wîz sîdîn
it was white of-silk

mit guldîner næte.
with golden seams.

ouch gezam vil wol der wæte
also befitted very well the clothing

ein gürtel den diu maget truoc;
a girdle which the maiden wore;

daz was ein borte guot genuoc
that was a braid good enough

von golde und von gesteine,
of gold and of gems,

grôz unde kleine.
great and small.

ûz einem smaragde was,
out-of an emerald was,

rehte grüene alsam ein gras,
right green as a grass,

diu rinke wol ergraben,
the buckle well engraved,

von golde ein ar dar ûf erhaben
of gold an eagle there upon raised

mit gesmelze harte wæhe;
with enamel very artful;

daz werc daz was spæhe.
the work it was curious.

daz diu spängel solden sîn
what the clasps should be

daz wâren tier guldîn,
those were beasts golden,

geworht mit grôzem vlîze;
wrought with great diligence;

dâ enzwischen berle wîze
there between pearls white

wâren gestecket.
were set.

sus was er bedecket
thus was it covered

mit edelem gesteine.
with noble gems.

ichn gesach ir nie deheine —
I saw of-them never any—

geworht âne zungen —
wrought without tongues—

diu sô wol bedrungen
which so well crowded

mit gezierde wære
with adornment were

als an disem mære.
as in this tale.

ouch was ein edele rubîn
also was a noble ruby

durch sînen wünniclîchen schîn
for its delightful shine

in den gürtel vor geleit;
into the girdle in-front laid;

als si dehein swachez leit
when her any mean sorrow

truobte in ir gemüete,
troubled in her mind,

sô benam des steines güete
so took-away the stone's virtue

mit süezem schîne ir ungemach,
with sweet shine her distress,

sô si sîn varwe rehte ersach;
when she its color rightly saw;

an tugende was er niht swach.
in virtue was it not weak.

Sich hêt diu maget rîche
Herself had the maiden rich

vil harte hövischlîche
very very courtly

in einen mantel gevangen,
into a mantle caught,

wîten unde langen,
wide and long,

genagelt wol mit golde,
studded well with gold,

bezogen als si wolde
lined as she would

mit einer veder härmîn;
with a fur ermine;

dâ wâren gesniten în
there were cut in

von einer hiute vischîn —
from a skin of-fish—

der hâr daz was weitîn,
whose hair it was woad-blue,

brâht von Îberne —
brought from Ireland—

mâne unde sterne;
moons and stars;

daz ziertę die veder harte wol;
that adorned the fur very well;

harmzagel was si vol
of-ermine-tails was it full

innen bestecket;
inside set;

die veder hêt bedecket
the fur had covered

ein alsô guot siglât
a so good ciclatoun

daz diu werlt niht bezzers hât.
that the world nothing better has.

ouch wâren diu tassel
also were the tassels

beidiu rôt unde gel,
both red and yellow,

ergraben harte kleine
engraved very fine

ûz einem edeln steine
out-of a noble stone

mit heidenischem liste:
with heathen cunning:

der was ein âmatiste,
the-one was an amethyst,

daz ander was ein jâchant.
the other was a jacinth.

ein zobel reichte ir ûf die hant,
a sable reached to-her up-to the hand,

der was swarz unde breit,
which was black and broad,

gemischet grâ unde reit,
mixed gray and curled,

als noch manic vrouwe treit.
as yet many-a lady wears.

An ir houbetloche vor
On her neck-opening in-front

was der herre Âmor
was the lord Amor

ergraben meisterlîche,
engraved masterfully,

rehte dem gelîche
right to-it alike

als ez leben solde;
as-if it live should;

eine strâle von golde
an arrow of gold

hêt er in der zeswen hant,
had he in the right hand,

in der andern einen brant;
in the other a brand;

daz werc was guot und kleine,
the work was good and fine,

ûz eim karfunkelsteine
out-of a carbuncle-stone

ergraben harte schône;
engraved very beautifully;

kleine als ein bône
small as a bean

was der selbe stein.
was the same stone.

vor der juncvrouwen er schein
before the young-lady it shone

des nahtes swâ si gie;
of-the night wherever she went;

dehein vinster er dâ lie
no darkness it there left

dâ diu juncvrouwe̜ inne was;
where the young-lady in was;

des tages glaster als ein glas.
of-the day it-glistened as a glass.

dâ hafte si̜ ir buosem mit
there fastened she her bosom with

nâch der Kärlinge sit.
after the Frenchmen's manner.

si was wol grôzer dinge wert;
she was well of-great things worth;

swes ir lîp zer werlte gert,
whatever her body in-the world desires,

des hât diu sælde si gewert.
of-that has the blessedness her granted.

Diu maget truoc ein schapel,
The maiden wore a chaplet,

daz was weitîn unde gel,
that was woad-blue and yellow,

rôt, brûn unde wîz;
red, brown and white;

dar an lac vil grôzer vlîz
there on lay very great diligence

von golde und von sîden.
of gold and of silk.

swer daz nu wolde nîden
whoever that now would envy

daz si sô schône was gekleit,
that she so beautifully was clad,

daz wær ein michel tôrheit,
that were a great folly,

wan ez ist âne ir aller schaden
for it is without of-them all harm

swaz ich ûf si mac geladen
whatever I upon her may load

von sîden und von borten
of silk and of braids

und von gezierdę, mit worten.
and of adornment, with words.

ir zöpfe wârn gebunden,
her braids were bound,

mit golde wol bewunden
with gold well wound

unz an des hâres ende;
until to the hair's end;

sô keiserlîch gebende
so imperial headdress

truoc diu maget reine.
wore the maiden pure.

ir hâr daz was kleine,
her hair it was fine,

goltvar unde reit;
gold-colored and curly;

ir scheitel wîz und niht ze breit.
her parting white and not too broad.

diu stirne was ir sinwel.
the brow was to-her round.

ebęn und lûter was ir vel,
even and clear was her skin,

von rôsen varwe wîze
from rose color white

getempert mit vlîze.
tempered with diligence.

ir brâ brûn, sleht unde smal.
her brows brown, smooth and narrow.

dâ bî hiengen ir zetal
there by hung to-her down

reide löcke goltvar.
curly locks gold-colored.

ir ougen lûter unde klâr.
her eyes clear and bright.

ez wære wîp oder man,
it were woman or man,

swen si güetlîche an
whom she kindly on

mit lachenden ougen sach,
with laughing eyes looked,

swaz dem leides ie geschach
whatever to-him of-sorrow ever happened

des was zehant vergezzen.
of-that was at-once forgotten.

diu Sældę hêt si besezzen.
the Blessedness had her possessed.

ir ôren [wârn] ze rehte gar,
her ears [were] to right wholly,

als si wæren erwünschet dar,
as-if they were wished there,

von liehtvarwer wîze,
of bright-colored white,

nâch dem gotes vlîze
after the God's diligence

beidiu krump unde hol.
both curved and hollow.

diu nase [was ir] geschaffen alsô wol:
the nose [was to-her] made so well:

swer si immer solde sehen,
whoever her ever should see,

dern möhte niht wandels dran erspehen
he might no blemish there-on spy

sine stüende gevüeclîche
unless-it should-stand fittingly

dem antlütz wol gelîche.
to-the face well alike.

diu hiufelîn [wârn ir] rôsenvar,
the little-cheeks [were to-her] rose-colored,

daz antlütze lûter gar
the face clear wholly

von rœte und von wîze,
of red and of white,

als si got mit vlîze
as-if them God with diligence

gemischet hêt begarwe.
mixed had wholly.

mit alsô liehter varwe
with so bright color

was ir lîp über al
was her body over all

linde und eben hin zetal.
soft and even thither down.

daz was dâ wol erzeiget:
that was there well shown:

der Wunsch hêt sich geneiget
the Ideal had itself inclined

vil gar in ir gewalt.
very wholly into her power.

ir munt der was sô wol gestalt
her mouth it was so well shaped

und sô minniclîche,
and so lovely,

und hêt si im gelîche
and (if)-had she to-him alike

sîne mâge alle ersterbet,
his kinsmen all killed,

in selben sô verderbet
him self so ruined

daz er vil kûme mohte genesen —
that he very scarcely might survive—

und soldez dannoch alsô wesen
and should-it then so be

daz er si kuste an ir munt,
that he her kissed on her mouth,

sô wær vergezzen sâ zestunt
so were forgotten straightway at-once

aller sîner swære,
all his heaviness,

als ez nie worden wære.
as-if it never become were.

ir zene wîz, ebèn und kleine,
her teeth white, even and small,

ûz vil lûterm beine
out-of very clear bone

zesamene gestecket;
together set;

der munt hêt si bedecket
the mouth had them covered

mit rôsenvarwer rœte. —
with rose-colored red.—

daz ich mich nu nœte
that I myself now force

der gedanke alsô verre,
of-the thoughts so far,

ich wæne ez mir niht werre,
I believe it me not harms,

wan von gedanken kumt der muot
for from thoughts comes the mind

der dem lîbe sanfte tuot. —
which to-the body gently does.—

ouch was ir diu kel
also was to-her the throat

sleht unde sinwel,
smooth and round,

harmwîz, als er jach
ermine-white, as he said

der die juncvrouwen sach;
who the young-lady saw;

ein breiter zobel drumbe gie,
a broad sable there-about went,

der ir vil lützel sehen lie,
which of-her very little to-see let,

wand er den hals gar umbe vie.
for it the neck wholly about caught.

The king gives Gawein his niece in marriage, and she conceives. A golden wheel of Fortune turns in the hall. After half a year Gawein longs for Arthur's court, tells his wife he will be gone three days, and leaves the girdle with her. He reaches Arthur's court, but without the girdle he can never find his way back, though he searches a year. His son is born and grows into a youth of every virtue.

Michn triegen dannẹ die sinne mîn,
Unless-me deceive then the wits mine,

si möhtẹ wol undẹr ir hemde sîn
she might well under her shift be

ein sô schœne crêatiure,
a so beautiful creature,

vil reine und sô gehiure,
very pure and so gentle,

von eim sô süezen lîbe
of a so sweet body

daz ich wæn ie von wîbe
that I believe ever of woman

reiner lîp würde geborn.
purer body should-become born.

diu Sælde hêt ir gesworn
the Blessedness had to-her sworn

ze belîben mit ir stæte
to remain with her steadfastly

immer undẹr ir wæte.
ever under her clothing.

des was ir schœner lîp wol wert,
of-that was her beautiful body well worth,

wan swes diu Sældẹ ze [gẹ]sellen gert
for whatever the Blessedness as [com]panion desires

der muoz gar âne wandel sîn;
it must wholly without blemish be;

daz was wol an der mägde schîn,
that was well in the maiden seen,

wan si vor allem valsche was
for she before all falseness was

lûter als ein spiegelglas.
clear as a mirror-glass.

des nam der rîter an ir war;
of-that took the knight in her heed;

ir grôziu schœne truoc in dar;
her great beauty bore him thither;

des minnẹt er si von herzen gar.
for-that loved he her from heart wholly.

Diu maget diu was rîche.
The maiden she was rich.

vil gezogenlîche
very courteously

saz si wider an ir stat.
sat she back at her place.

der wirt den herren Gâwein bat
the host the lord Gawein begged

ze leisten sîne sicherheit;
to fulfill his surety;

er sprach 'herre ich bins bereit,
he spoke 'lord I am-of-it ready,

wand ich alsô gesworen hân.'
for I so sworn have.'

die maget hiez er ûf stân
the maiden bade he up stand

und sprach 'sô nemt ze wîbe
and spoke 'so take as wife

dise maget iuwerm lîbe
this maiden to-your body

ze triuwen und ze rehter ê.'
in faith and in right marriage.'

der herre Gâwein sprach ‘owê,
the lord Gawein spoke ‘alas,

ich wæne es iu niht ernst sî!
I believe it to-you not earnest be!

ich liezẹ drumb al die werlt vrî,
I would-let for-it all the world free,

ob sî mîn eigen wære,
if she my own were,

daz ich mîne swære
that I my heaviness

mit ir vertrîben solde!
with her drive-away should!

wan ez got wolde
would-that it God willed

daz si mîn vrouwe solde sîn,
that she my lady should be,

sô hêt alrêrst diu sælde mîn
so had first-of-all the blessedness mine

mîn vreude gar gekrœnet
my joy wholly crowned

und œsterlîch geschœnet,
and Easter-like beautified,

wan swaz ich her gedienet hân,
for whatever I hither served have,

sît ich mich guotes êrst versan,
since I myself of-good first understood,

allen guoten wîben,
to-all good women,

daz muoz nû belîben;
that must now remain;

ichn müge es lôn von ir gehaben,
unless-I may of-it reward from her have,

mîn vreude ist êwiclîch begraben
my joy is eternally buried

mit jâmer unz an mînen tôt.
with grief until to my death.

hêt ich alle mîne nôt
(if)-had I all my distress

erliten durch die schœnen maget,
suffered for the beautiful maiden,

sôn würde sị nimmer mê geklaget,
so would-become it never more lamented,

wan si erliuht daz herze mîn
for she lights the heart mine

rehte alsô der sunnen schîn
right as the sun's shine

tuot den liehten sumertac.
does the bright summer-day.

mit lobe ich niht verenden mac
with praise I not end may

ir schœne und ir gewizzen,
her beauty and her discretion,

wan hêt sich ie gevlizzen
for (if)-had himself ever applied

Ôvîdîus mit lobe dar,
Ovid with praise there-to,

ern möhte sị niht volloben gar.'
he might her not fully-praise wholly.'

si bedorftẹ wol schœne unde jugent,
she needed well beauty and youth,

gewizzen unde ganzer tugent,
discretion and whole virtue,

sît si nam ein der tiurste man
since she took one the dearest man

der rîters namen ie gewan;
who knight's name ever won;

den mohte ouch si mit êren hân.
him might also she with honors have.

Dô sînẹn ernst der wirt ersach,
When his earnest the host saw,

zem herren Gâwein er dô sprach
to-the lord Gawein he then spoke

'sît ez nu got gevüeget hât,
'since it now God fitted has,

an dem daz dinc allez stât,
on whom the thing all stands,

daz iu diu magt beschaffen ist,
that to-you the maiden destined is,

sô gebe iu unser herre Krist
so give you our lord Christ

beiden sælde und êre!'
both blessedness and honor!'

der rede enwart niht mêre.
of-the speech became no more.

des wart der rîter harte vrô.
of-that became the knight very glad.

ze sînen triuwen nam er sị dô;
in his faith took he her then;

sam tet in diu reine maget,
likewise did him the pure maiden,

weinende, als mir ist gesaget.
weeping, as to-me is told.

der künic wolds getrœstet hân,
the king would-her comforted have,

daz si ir weinen hêt verlân,
that she her weeping had left,

mit worten; dô nemohter.
with words; then could-he-not.

des küniges swester tohter
the king's sister's daughter

was diu maget wol getân.
was the maiden well made.

dô in der segen wart getân,
when to-them the blessing became done,

küssende er si umbe vie;
kissing he her about caught;

der rîter mit ir slâfen gie;
the knight with her to-sleep went;

im geschach dâ vor sô liebe nie.
to-him happened there before so dear never.

Nû wart im daz reine wîp
Now became to-him the pure woman

liep alsam sîn eigen lîp.
dear as his own body.

sus ruowet er nâch sîner vart,
thus rested he after his journey,

unz diu vrouwe swanger wart
until the lady pregnant became

bî im eines kindes.
by him with-a child.

ouch was des gesindes
also was of-the household

vreude von dem gaste grôz,
joy from the guest great,

wand in der arbeit niht verdrôz
for him the toil not irked

swâ ẹr in gedienen mohte,
wherever he them serve might,

iegelîchem als im tohte.
each as to-him availed.

rîterschefte was dâ vil;
of-knighthood was there much;

mit hunden und mit vederspil
with hounds and with hawks

reit der gast, als im gezam.
rode the guest, as to-him befitted.

er hêt erworben daz sîn nam
he had won that his name

von sîner tugent was erkant;
from his virtue was known;

er zierte wol des küniges lant,
he adorned well the king's land,

wan sîn gelîchen niemen vant.
for his like no-one found.

Ûf des küniges veste
Upon the king's fortress

was daz aller beste
was the of-all best

werc von rôtem golde
work of red gold

gegozzen, als er wolde:
cast, as he would:

ein rat, enmitten ûf den sal;
a wheel, in-the-middle upon the hall;

daz gienc ûf und zetal;
it went up and down;

dâ wâren bilde gegozzen an,
there were images cast on-it,

iegelîchz geschaffen als ein man.
each shaped as a man.

hie sigen díu mit dem rade nider,
here sank they with the wheel down,

sô stigen d'andern ûf wider;
so climbed the-others up again;

sus gienc ez umbe an der stat;
thus went it around in the place;

daz was des gelückes rat.
that was the fortune's wheel.

ez hêt ein pfaffe gemeistert dar;
it had a priest mastered there;

von rôtem golde was ez gar.
of red gold was it wholly.

ez bezeichent daz dem wirte nie
it signifies that to-the host never

an deheinem dinge missegie,
in any thing miscarried,

wan daz gelücke volgẹt im ie.
for the fortune follows him ever.

Nû was des wol ein halbez jâr
Now was of-that well a half year

daz der gast was komen dar.
that the guest was come thither.

eins tagẹs er trûrende gie.
one day he grieving went.

vil grôzer jâmer in gevie:
very great grief him seized:

in truoc sîn herze und sîn sin
him bore his heart and his mind

zuo der mässenîe hin
to the household thither

und zuo der tavelrunde.
and to the round-table.

die strâze er vil wol kunde
the road he very well knew

wider in sîns herren lant.
back into his lord's land.

her Gâwein gie sâ zehant
lord Gawein went straightway at-once

ze sînem wîbe; als er die sach,
to his wife; when he her saw,

mit grôzem jâmer er dô sprach
with great grief he then spoke

‘got müez iu den lîp bewarn;
‘God may to-you the life guard;

vrouwe, ich wil von hinnen varn
lady, I will from hence fare

mit urloube drîe tage.’
with leave three days.’

die lüge tet er durch die klage:
the lie did he for the lament:

er vorhte ir jâmer und ir nôt.
he feared her grief and her distress.

beidiu trüebe unde rôt
both troubled and red

wurdẹn ir ougen an der stat.
became her eyes in the place.

vil sêre siuftunde sị in bat,
very sorely sighing she him begged,

wand ir sagte ir swærre muot,
for to-her told her heavy mind,

als er mir selben ofte tuot,
as it to-me self often does,

daz er ze lange wolde sîn. —
that he too long would be.—

si sprach ‘lieber herre mîn,
she spoke ‘dear lord mine,

belîbet hie, daz ist mîn rât;
remain here, that is my counsel;

mîn dinc mir angestlîche stât;
my affair to-me fearfully stands;

daz seht ir, unde wizzet wol
that see you, and know well

daz ich grôzen kumber dol
that I great grief suffer

von mîner swære die ich hân.
from my heaviness which I have.

herre, ir sult hie bestân
lord, you shall here remain

unz ir beseht wiez mir ergê:
until you see how-it to-me goes:

ez kumt vil lîhte daz ir ê
it comes very easily that you before

niht wider komt, ichn sî genesen;
not back come, unless-I be delivered;

des müese ich immer jâmerc wesen.'
of-that must I ever wretched be.'

dochn trûwet sị der geschiht niht.
yet trusted she the event not.

owê, waz des noch geschiht
alas, what of-that yet happens

daz man wol verswüere!
which one well should-forswear!

daz er alsô gevüere
that he so should-fare

dâ hêt er weizgot vür gesworn,
there had he God-knows against sworn,

wand er ze stæte hêt erkorn
for he for steadfastness had chosen

daz wesen sînem lîbe
the being for-his body

bî sînem reinen wîbe.
by his pure wife.

im was daz leider unerkant
to-him was that alas unknown

daz niemen mohte in daz lant
that no-one might into the land

ân ḍẹs küniges geleite komen;
without the king's escort come;

und hêt er daz ie vernomen,
and (if)-had he that ever heard,

sô hêt er sichs vil wol bewart
so had he himself-of-it very well guarded

daz ez im immer ûf die vart
that it to-him ever on the journey

alsô komen wære.
so come were.

sus benam er ir ir swære:
thus took-away he from-her her heaviness:

er sprach 'vrouwe, gehabt iuch wol,
he spoke 'lady, fare you well,

wand ich immer mit iu dol
for I ever with you suffer

beidiu liep unde leit;
both joy and sorrow;

iu ist von mir unverseit
to-you is from me unrefused

minne unde triuwe;
love and faith;

ich wil iu âne riuwe
I will to-you without rue

immer wesen undertân.
ever be subject.

ir sult ez niemen wizzen lân
you shall it no-one know let

daz ich hinnen rîten wil;
that I hence ride will;

ich kum iu in vil kurzem zil
I come to-you in very short span

michn irres dannẹ der bitter tôt
unless-me hinders then the bitter death

od sô ungevüegiu nôt
or so monstrous distress

die niemen müge erwenden;
which no-one may avert;

dise reise wil ich enden
this journey will I end

daz sîn niemen werde gewar
that of-it no-one become aware

war ich welle od wie ich var;
whither I will or how I fare;

daz ist nâch mînem willen gar.'
that is after my will wholly.'

Diu vrouwe wart des trôstes vrô:
The lady became of-the comfort glad:

si wânde ez ergienge alsô.
she believed it should-go so.

dô kuste er si und schiet dan;
then kissed he her and parted away;

sînen willen wesse dehein man.
his will knew no man.

ûf sîn ors saz er zehant,
upon his steed sat he at-once,

verholn nam er sîn îsengwant
secretly took he his iron-clothing

und reit ûz vil balde
and rode out very quickly

die strâze gegẹn dem walde.
the road toward the forest.

ich wil iu ein wunder sagen:
I will to-you a wonder tell:

daz er dar reit in zwelf tagen,
what he there rode in twelve days,

daz reit er wider eịn halbez jâr.
that rode he back a half year.

alsus kom er geriten dar
thus came he ridden there

ze Karidôl vür daz hûs.
to Karidol before the house.

nu was der künic Artûs
now was the king Arthur

gegangen vür daz bürgetor;
gone before the castle-gate;

dâ hôrte man in klagen vor
there heard one him lament before

sînen neven, den hern Gâwein.
his nephew, the lord Gawein.

in dirre klage dô erschein
in this lament then appeared

sîn wâfen an dem schilte.
his arms on the shield.

künc Artûs der milte
king Arthur the generous

lief gegẹn im und enpfienc in dô.
ran toward him and received him then.

daz gesinde wart allez vrô;
the household became all glad;

rîter unde knehte
knights and servants

enpfiengẹn in wol von rehte,
received him well by right,

wand er hêt tugenthaften muot;
for he had virtuous mind;

er was getriuwe unde guot,
he was faithful and good,

vor allem valsche wol behuot.
from all falseness well guarded.

Dô vlugen diu mære
Then flew the tidings

daz er komen wære
that he come were

von hûse ze hûse.
from house to house.

mit dem künige Artûse
with the king Arthur

gienc er zuo den vrouwen sâ.
went he to the ladies at-once.

diu küniginne enpfienc in dâ
the queen received him there

und ir vrouwen über al;
and her ladies over all;

zuo in saz er ûf den sal.
to them sat he up-in the hall.

si vrâgeten in der mære
they asked him for-the tidings

wiez im ergangen wære;
how-it to-him gone were;

des sagte er in genuoc;
of-that told he them enough;

sîner geschiht er nie gewuoc,
of-his event he never mentioned,

wan in sîn herzę dar wider truoc.
for him his heart there back bore.

Nu nam er des vil rehte war
Now took he of-that very rightly heed

daz er die mässenîe gar
that he the household wholly

dâ vant als er sị gelâzen hêt,
there found as he them left had,

und daz der hof ganzer stêt,
and that the court whole stands,

des vreut er sich vil sêre.
of-that rejoiced he himself very sorely.

diu künịgîn Ginovêre
the queen Ginover

hiez sîn rîterlîche pflegen.
bade of-him knightly to-take-care.

dône wolde iedoch der degen
then would yet the thane

niht turnieren als ê,
not tourney as before,

wan im tet der jâmer wê
for to-him did the grief woe

nâch sînem schœnen wîbe.
after his beautiful wife.

er gedâhte ‘ob ich belîbe
he thought ‘if I remain

lenger hie, des gwinne ich schaden.’
longer here, of-that win I harm.’

sîn stæter muot begunde in laden
his steadfast mind began him to-invite

wider in sîns geswîgen lant.
back into his kinsman’s land.

vil tougenlîch gie er zehant
very secretly went he at-once

eine vür daz bürgetor;
alone before the castle-gate;

dâ vant er sîne knappen vor.
there found he his squires before.

er sprach 'bringet mir mîn ors her,
he spoke 'bring me my steed hither,

harnasch, schilt unde sper,
harness, shield and spear,

und saget niemen mîne vart.'
and tell no-one my journey.'

vil snelle ez im brâht wart;
very swiftly it to-him brought became;

dô saz er ûf und reit zehant;
then sat he up and rode at-once;

ouch brâhtens im sîn îsengwant
also brought-they him his iron-clothing

in den walt, als er gebôt.
into the forest, as he commanded.

in twanc diu minnende nôt
him forced the loving distress

unz si in dar ûf brâhte
until it him there to brought

daz er dar wider gâhte
that he thither back hastened

dâ er sîn wîp hêt verlân.
where he his wife had left.

die knappen riten mit im dan.
the squires rode with him away.

sus reit er umbe ein ganzez jâr
thus rode he about a whole year

unz er diu lant älliu gar
until he the lands all wholly

vor den bergen durch reit.
before the mountains through rode.

daz was ein verlorniu arbeit:
that was a lost toil:

als ichz ofte hân vernomen,
as I-it often have heard,

in daz lant moht niemen komen
into the land might no-one come

ern hêt den gürtel den er lie
unless-he had the girdle which he left

sînem wîbe, dô er die
to-his wife, when he her

aller jungest mit jâmer sach.
of-all last with grief saw.

sînes herzen ungemach
his heart's distress

wart dâ von sô grôz
became there from so great

daz in des lebens gar verdrôz;
that him of-the life wholly irked;

des ouch sîn lîp vil wênic ge̩nôz.
of-which also his body very little enjoyed.

Dô er mit vrâge daz bevant
When he with asking that found-out

daz niemen mohte in daz lant
that no-one might into the land

vor den hôhen bergen komen,
before the high mountains come,

als er die wârheit hêt vernomen,
as he the truth had heard,

dô teter als der biderbe̩ man,
then did-he as the worthy man,

der sich des wol getrœsten kan
who himself of-that well comfort can

swes er niht gehaben mac.
which he not have may.

swer ie guoter sinne pflac,
whoever ever good wits practiced,

der habe ouch noch denselben sit:
he have also yet the-same custom:

dâ vristet er sîn êre mit.
there preserves he his honor with.

sus reit er [wider] zuo des küniges hûs.
thus rode he [back] to the king's house.

nu was der milte Artûs
now was the generous Arthur

mit rîterschefte an der plân;
with knighthood on the plain;

dâ kam ouch her Gâwein an
there came also lord Gawein on

geriten zuo des küniges schar.
ridden to the king's troop.

des tages was sîn zwei jâr
of-the day was of-it two years

daz sîn wîp was genesen.
that his wife was delivered.

hie lâze wir den rîter wesen
here let we the knight be

und sagen wiez dem kinde ergie.
and tell how-it to-the child went.

sîn reiniu muoter woldez nie
its pure mother would-it never

von ir gelâzen einen tac;
from her let one day;

vor liebe si sîn selbe pflac
for love she of-it self took-care

und ander manic vrouwe hêr.
and other many-a lady noble.

in einem jâre wuohs ez mêr
in one year grew it more

dan ein anderz in zwein tuo.
than an other in two does.

man lêrtez spâte unde vruo
one taught-it late and early

gewizzen unde güete.
discretion and goodness.

ouch was sîn gemüete
also was its mind

zallen dingen veste;
in-all things firm;

ez tet niwan daz beste;
it did nothing-but the best;

von rehte muosez sælic sîn.
by right must-it blessed be.

ez zôch ein rîchiu künigîn
it reared a rich queen

unze zuo zwelf jâren;
until to twelve years;

die dô die tiursten wâren
who then the dearest were

und die besten rîter dâ,
and the best knights there,

die underwunden sich sîn sâ;
they undertook themselves of-it at-once;

si lêrtenz rîten unde gên,
they taught-it to-ride and to-walk,

mit zühten sprechen unde stên.
with breeding to-speak and to-stand.

des volgęt er in, wan er was guot,
of-that followed he them, for he was good,

zallen dingen wol gemuot.
in-all things well minded.

daz beste ie nâch dem besten tuot.
the best ever after the best does.

The boy longs to find his father, Gawein, and asks leave; Florie begs him to stay, then gives him his father's girdle and laments as he rides away. A page he meets on the road tells him of Arthur's court at Karidol and the coming tournament. There he sits upon a stone by a linden that no one with any fault can approach, which only Arthur had sat on before, and the king and the court come out to greet him.

Nu gap im got in sîner jugent
Now gave him God in his youth
schœnen lîp und ganze tugent;
beautiful body and whole virtue;
die behielt er an sîn ende.
which kept he to his end.
âne missewende
without blemish
lebt er in sîner kintheit.
lived he in his childhood.
sîn dienst was allen den bereit
his service was to-all those ready
die sîn von im geruochten;
who of-it from him desired;
die gâbe ouch an in suochten,
who gift also from him sought,
den gap er als in tohte,
to-them gave he as to-them availed,
swen erz gewinnen mohte.
whenever he-it win might.
aller hande rîter spil
of-all kinds knightly sport
lêrten in die rîter vil:
taught him the knights much:
buhurdieren unde stechen,
jousting and tilting,

diu starken sper zebrechen,
the strong spears to-break,

schirmen unde schiezen.
fencing and shooting.

swen in die rîter liezen,
whenever him the knights let,

sô nâmen in die vrouwen wider:
so took him the ladies back:

man vuorte in ûf unde nider.
one led him up and down.

von sîner tugent daz geschach
from his virtue that happened

daz man in zallen zîten sach
that one him at-all times saw

gerner danne ein andern man.
more-gladly than an other man.

wol in, der daz verdienen kan
well for-him, who that earn can

daz in diu werlt gerne siht
that him the world gladly sees

und daz man im des besten giht!
and that one to-him of-the best says!

dem hât got sælden vil gegeben;
to-him has God blessings much given;

er mac ouch deste gerner leben.
he may also the more-gladly live.

sîn sælde hât ie des gegert
his blessedness has ever of-that desired

daz er den liuten würde wert;
that he to-the people should-become worthy;

des wart ouch er von in gewert.
of-that became also he by them granted.

Nu hêt er vordes vil vernomen
Now had he before much heard

wie sîn vater dar was komen,
how his father thither was come,

wand im wart ofte vür geleit
for to-him became often before laid

sînes vater vrümicheit,
his father's valor,

wie manhaft er wære.
how manly he were.

sine wessẹn ab niht der mære
they knew but nothing of-the tidings

ob er wær in dẹheiner nôt;
whether he were in any distress;

weder er lebte od wære tôt,
whether he lived or were dead,

daz was in allen unbekant.
that was to-them all unknown.

der juncherre ez sît bevant.
the young-lord it afterward found-out.

in sînen vreuden truobte in ie
in his joys troubled him ever

daz er sînen vater nie
that he his father never

gesach bî allen sînen tagen.
saw by all his days.

daz begunde er tougenlîche klagen
that began he secretly to-lament

und gie zuo der muoter sîn
and went to the mother his

und zuo der edeln künigîn,
and to the noble queen,

diu hêt in ûz der toufe erhaben.
who had him out-of the baptism raised.

er sprach ‘vrouwe, lât mich haben
he spoke ‘lady, let me have

iuwer hulde und iuwern segen.
your favor and your blessing.

got müez iuwer beider pflegen
God may of-you both take-care

und geruoche iuch vor dem tôde bewarn.
and deign you from the death to-guard.

ich wil benamen hinnen varn,
I will assuredly hence fare,

in mîner jugènt erwerben daz
in my youth win that

daz man mich von rehte baz
that one me by right better

erkenne danne ein andern man,
know than an other man,

als mîn vater hât getân.
as my father has done.

waz sol mir mîn starker lîp,
what shall to-me my strong body,

und sol ich mich nu als ein wîp
and shall I myself now as a woman

verligen in disem lande hie?
lie-idle in this land here?

ịch wil den suochèn von dem mir ie
I will him seek from whom to-me ever

tugent unde manheit
virtue and manhood

allez mîn leben ist geseit;
all my life is told;

daz ist mîn vater, her Gâwéin,
that is my father, lord Gawein,

der ie in rîters êren schein,
who ever in knight’s honors shone,

als ichz von im hân vernomen.
as I-it of him have heard.

ichn wil nimmer wider komen
I will never back come

ez ensî daz ich in gesehe,
it unless-be that I him see,

swaz halt mir dar nâch geschehe;
whatever even to-me there after happen;

des gunnet mir, wand ez muoz sîn.
that grant me, for it must be.

vrouwe und liebiu muoter mîn,
lady and dear mother mine,

mir seit daz mîn gedinge
to-me says that my hope

daz ich in wider bringe;
that I him back bring;

got gebẹ daz mir gelinge!'
God give that to-me succeed!'

Dô man sîn ernest rehte ersach,
When one his earnest rightly saw,

sîn muoter, vrouwẹ Flôrîe, sprach
his mother, lady Florie, spoke

'lieber sun, nu volge mir,
'dear son, now follow me,

wan du erkennest wol daz wir
for thou knowest well that we

sîn hân gebiten [wol] zweinzic jâr.
for-him have waited [well] twenty years.

hie bî mahtu nemen war,
here by mayst-thou take heed,

als ichz von im hân vernomen,
as I-it of him have heard,

lebter, er wære wider komen.
(if)-lived-he, he were back come.

ich erkande sîne triuwe wol;
I knew his faith well;

er was ganzer triuwen vol.
he was of-whole faith full.

owê, daz ich in ie erkôs
alas, that I him ever chose

mir ze vriunt, sît i'n verlôs
to-me as beloved, since I-him lost

sô wunderlîche, ichn weiz wie.
so wondrously, I-not know how.

sîn gelîche dern wart nie
his like it became never

und wirt ouch nimmer mê geborn.
and becomes also never more born.

sol ich in alsô hân verlorn,
(if)-shall I him so have lost,

sô muoz ich jâmer unde nôt
so must I grief and distress

lîden unz an mînen tôt.
suffer until to my death.

herre got, der mägde kint,
lord God, the maiden's child,

sît dir diu herze offen sint
since to-thee the hearts open are

und alle willen ûf getân,
and all wills up opened,

wie hâstu mich alsô verlân!
how hast-thou me so left!

keiser, herre, reiner Krist,
emperor, lord, pure Christ,

sît dir niht verborgen ist
since from-thee nothing hidden is

und ân dich niht genesen mac,
and without thee nothing survive may,

lâ mich geleben noch den tac
let me live-to yet the day

daz ich gesehe den ich trage
that I see whom I carry

in mînem herzen alle tage
in my heart all days

beidiu mit jâmer und mit klage!'
both with grief and with lament!'

An ir gebærden daz wol schein
In her bearing that well appeared

daz ir der herre Gâwein
that to-her the lord Gawein

was liep als ir eigen lîp.
was dear as her own body.

si sprach 'herre, nû belîp,
she spoke 'lord, now remain,

lieber sun, bî mir hie.'
dear son, by me here.'

er sprach 'liebiu muoter, wie
he spoke 'dear mother, how

sol mîn nam werden erkant
shall my name become known

ichn rîte ûz in andriu lant,
unless-I ride out into other lands,

als mîn vater her în tet?
as my father hither in did?

ir sult lâzen iuwer bet.
you shall leave your request.

ịch wil verdienèn der besten gruoz
I will earn the best's greeting

und daz man mich erkennen muoz,
and that one me know must,

od ich verliuse mînen lîp.
or I lose my life.

swer sînen rât læt an diu wîp,
whoever his counsel leaves to the women,

dern ist niht ein wîser man.
he is not a wise man.

dehein dinc mich des erwenden kan
no thing me from-that turn can

mîn lîp dern müeze gewâget sîn.'
my body unless-it must ventured be.'

'herre und lieber sun mîn,
'lord and dear son mine,

sît ichs dich niht erwenden kan,
since I-of-it thee not turn can,

sô nim ein kleinôt daz ich hân;
so take a jewel which I have;

behaltez unz an dînen tôt,
keep-it until to thy death,

und wis sicher vor aller nôt;
and be safe from all distress;

daz ist ein gürtel, den mir lie
that is a girdle, which to-me left

dîn vater, dô er jungest gie
thy father, when he last went

von mir und urloup hêt genomen
from me and leave had taken

als er wider solde komen.
as-if he back should come.

an mîne sêle bevalch er mir
on my soul commanded he me

daz ich den gürtel gæbe dir, —
that I the girdle should-give thee,—

als ich dir geseit hân —
as I to-thee told have—

ob dụ immer würdest ze man,
if thou ever became to man,

swen du woldest hinnen varn.
when thou wouldst hence fare.

du solt den gürtel sô bewarn
thou shalt the girdle so guard

daz sîn iemen werde gewar.'
that of-it anyone become aware.'

vil heize weinde gap sị in dar;
very hotly weeping gave she it thither;

er kuste si und neic ir dô.
he kissed her and bowed to-her then.

die vrouwen wurden alle unvrô.
the ladies became all unglad.

sus nam er urloup unde reit.
thus took he leave and rode.

daz gelücke was im ie bereit;
the fortune was to-him ever ready;

des erziugẹt er grôze manheit.
of-that proved he great manhood.

Sîn muoter, vrouwẹ Flôrîe, stuont
His mother, lady Florie, stood

mit grôzem jâmer, sô die tuont
with great grief, as those do

den grôz herzeleit geschiht.
to-whom great heart-sorrow happens.

ir jâmer hal sich lenger niht
her grief hid itself longer not

dô si in von ir rîten sach.
when she him from her ride saw.

mit grôzer klage si dô sprach
with great lament she then spoke

'owê, ich vil armez wîp!
'alas, I very poor woman!

waz sol mir guot unde lîp?
what shall to-me goods and body?

waz sol mir schœne unde jugent,
what shall to-me beauty and youth,

gewizzen unde ganziu tugent?
discretion and whole virtue?

ich hân verlorn den tiursten man
I have lost the dearest man

den wîp ze vriunde ie gewan,
whom woman as beloved ever won,

dar zuo mîn einigez kint.
there to my only child.

herre got, sît dir sint
lord God, since to-thee are

älliu dinc undertân
all things subject

und ân dich niht genesen kan,
and without thee nothing survive can,

sô bevilhe ich hiute in dînen segen
so commend I today into thy blessing

mîn kint, daz du sîn ruochest pflegen
my child, that thou of-him deign to-take-care

an dirre vart, durch dînen tôt.
on this journey, for thy death.

beschirme in, herre, vor grôzer nôt
shield him, lord, from great distress

und sende in mir gesunden wider!'
and send him to-me whole back!'

in der klagè dô reit er nider
in the lament then rode he down

von dem hûse durch die stat.
from the house through the town.

daz liut im allez heiles bat;
the people for-him all salvation begged;

daz machet sîn vil reiner muot;
that made his very pure mind;

er was gewizzen unde guot,
he was discreet and good,

den tumben tump, den wîsen vruot.
to-the foolish foolish, to-the wise wise.

Sus reit er verre durch diu lant,
Thus rode he far through the lands,

und was im dannoch unbekant
and was to-him still unknown

war er kêren wolde;
whither he turn would;

ern wesse war er solde;
he-not knew whither he should;

in disen sorgen reit er.
in these cares rode he.

nu kom gegẹn im geloufen her
now came toward him running hither

ûf dem wege ein garzûn.
upon the way a page.

der truoc einen schaprûn,
he wore a hood,

gesniten von fritschâle;
cut of Frisian-cloth;

mit rôtem zendale
with red sendal

was er gefurrieret.
was it lined.

sîn huot was gezieret
his hat was adorned

mit bluomen und mit loube.
with flowers and with foliage.

sus lief er in dem stoube.
thus ran he in the dust.

des rôten seites von der gran
of-the red cloth of the grain-dye

truoc er einen roc an,
wore he a coat on,

gebrîst mit grôzem vlîze;
laced with great diligence;

hantschuohe wîze
gloves white

hêt er an den henden.
had he on the hands.

den stap begunde er wenden
the staff began he to-turn

nâch der garzûne sit:
after the pages' custom:

dâ vürdert er sîn loufen mit.
there furthered he his running with.

sîne hosen wâren guot genuoc;
his hose were good enough;

zwêne brîsschuoch er an truoc.
two laced-shoes he on wore.

und als er im sô nâhen kam,
and when he to-him so near came,

sînen huot er abe nam;
his hat he off took;

hie mit êrẹt er in alsô.
here with honored he him so.

der juncherre gruozte in dô
the young-lord greeted him then

und vrâget in der mære
and asked him for-the tidings

wes garzûn er wære.
whose page he were.

er sprach ‘des aller tiursten man
he spoke ‘of-the of-all dearest man

der künicrîche ie gewan:
who kingdoms ever won:

des küniges von Britanje.
of-the king of Britain.

der hât mich zIspanje
he has me to-Spain

nâch rîtern ûz gesant
after knights out sent

ẹz hât der künìc von Engellant
it has the king of England

einen turnei wider in genomen;
a tournament against him taken;

dar suln im die rîter komen
there shall to-him the knights come

ze Karidôl vür sîn hûs;
to Karidol before his house;

dâ sol der künic Artûs
there shall the king Arthur

wol driu tûsent rîter haben;
well three thousand knights have;

durch daz hân ich mich ûz erhaben.’
for that have I myself out raised.’

der juncherre sprach ‘nu sagẹ mir mê
the young-lord spoke ‘now tell me more

wiez in sînem hove stê.’
how-it in his court stands.’

er sprach ‘herre, ich sagiu daz:
he spoke ‘lord, I tell-you that:

in nie deheinem hove baz;
in never any court better;

dâ ist grôz rîterschaft
there is great knighthood

und alles des diu überkraft
and of-all that the abundance

des man ze vreuden gert.
of-which one for joys desires.

komt ir dar, ir wert gewert
(if)-come you thither, you become granted

swes iu der muot erdenken kan.
whatever to-you the mind devise can.

dâne zwîvelt nimmer an,
there doubt never on-it,

wand ichz wol erkunnet hân.'
for I-it well tested have.'

'Nu zeige mir den wec dar.'
'Now show me the way thither.'

er sprach 'nu nemt der strâze war
he spoke 'now take of-the road heed

die ich her komen bin;
which I hither come am;

diu treit iuch vil rehte hin
it carries you very rightly thither

ze Karidôl vür daz hûs;
to Karidol before the house;

dâ ist der künic Artûs
there is the king Arthur

mit grôzen hôchzîten.'
with great festivals.'

zehant begunder rîten
at-once began-he to-ride

und kom dar an dem niunden tage.
and came thither on the ninth day.

nâch des garzûnes sage
after the page's saying

vant er michel vreude dâ.
found he great joy there.

ûf den hof reit er sâ,
onto the court rode he at-once,

dâ manic âventiure geschach.
where many-a adventure happened.

bî einer linden er dô sach
by a linden he then saw

ligen einen breiten stein,
lie a broad stone,

des tugent im inz herze schein,
whose virtue to-him into-the heart shone,

gevieret und niht sinwel;
squared and not round;

striemen rôt unde gel
stripes red and yellow

giengen dar durch eteswâ;
went there through somewhere;

daz ander teil daz was blâ,
the other part it was blue,

lûter als ein spiegelglas.
clear as a mirror-glass.

sô grôziu tugent an im was
so great virtue in it was

daz deheiner slahte man
that of-no kind man

der ie deheinen valsch gewan
who ever any falseness had

die hant niht mohte gelâzen dran.
the hand not might lay there-on.

Zuo der linden reit der gast,
To the linden rode the guest,

sîn pfärt hafter an einen ast
his palfrey tied-he to a branch

und saz enmitten ûf den stein.
and sat in-the-middle upon the stone.

sîn herze was âne mein
his heart was without wrong

und ledic aller bôsheit;
and free of-all wickedness;

sîn muot ie nâch dem besten streit.
his mind ever after the best strove.

swer ie dhein untugènt begie,
whoever ever any vice committed,

dern mohte dẹm steine nâher nie
he might to-the stone nearer never

komen dan eins klâfters lanc;
come than a fathom long;

si tâten alle widerwanc,
they did all turning-back,

sô si zem steine wolden gên;
when they to-the stone would go;

si muosen alle hôher stên.
they must all farther stand.

ezn was dâ vor nie geschehen
it was there before never happened

daz ie iemen würde ersehen
that ever anyone should-become seen

ûf demselben steine,
upon the-same stone,

niwan der künìc [al] eine:
except the king [all] alone:

der was âne wandel gar.
he was without blemish wholly.

her Gâwein der reichte dar
lord Gawein he reached there

mit der hant, und niht baz;
with the hand, and no further;

ich sagiu wie ẹr verworhte daz
I tell-you how he forfeited that

er zem steine niht moht komen,
he to-the stone not might come,

als ichz ofte hân vernomen:
as I-it often have heard:

eine maget wol getân
a maiden well made

die greif er übẹr ir willen an,
her seized he against her will on,

sô daz si weinde unde schrê.
so that she wept and cried.

deheiner slahte untugent mê
of-no kind vice more

er von sîner kintheit nie
he from his childhood never

unz an sînen tôt begie;
until to his death committed;

diu selbe in zuo dem steinẹ niht lie.
the same him to the stone not let.

Dô man den knappen dar ûf sach,
When one the squire there upon saw,

einem rîter wart vil gâch
to-a knight became very hasty

vür den künic, und sprach alsô
before the king, and spoke so

'herre, ir sult wesen vrô!
'lord, you shall be glad!

ein âventiure ist hie geschehen:
an adventure is here happened:

ich hân ûf dem steine ersehen
I have upon the stone seen

sitzen einen jungelinc.'
sit a youth.'

daz dûhte sị alle samt ein dinc
that seemed to-them all together a thing

grôz unde wunderlîch.
great and wondrous.

der edeln rîter iegelîch
of-the noble knights each

îlte vür den andern dar
hastened before the other thither

und nâmen der geschiht war.
and took of-the event heed.

der künic stuont [ûf] von sîner stat;
the king stood [up] from his place;

die vrouwen er dô gên bat
the ladies he then go bade

mit im zuo dem steine nider;
with him to the stone down;

des satztẹ sich ir deheiniu wider.
of-that set herself of-them none against.

dô daz gesinde in gerne sach,
when the household him gladly saw,

der künic zuo den vrouwen sprach
the king to the ladies spoke

'enpfâhe wir ịn! des ist er wert,
'receive we him! of-that is he worth,

und wizzet, swes er an mich gert
and know, whatever he of me desires

im ze vrumen, daz ịst getân;
to-him for profit, that is done;

und wil er hie bî mir bestân,
and will he here by me remain,

ich behalte in nâch sîn̤em rehte.
I keep him after his right.

rîter unde knehte
knights and servants

die giengen mit im über al
they went with him over all

zuo dem steine hin zetal;
to the stone thither down;

mit vreuden rûmten si den sal.
with joys emptied they the hall.

VI · THE KNIGHT OF THE WHEEL

He names himself Gwigalois and asks to be made a knight; Arthur entrusts him to Gawein, neither knowing the other. At Pentecost he takes the sword Gawein gives him and his seat at the round table. A maiden arrives with a singing dwarf, seeking a champion for her lady; Gwigalois claims the adventure, and she rides off angry at his youth. He arms with a black shield bearing a golden wheel.

Dem juncherren was unbekant
To-the young-lord was unknown

wiez umb̤ den stein was gewant;
how-it about the stone was turned;

hêt erz von iemen ê vernomen,
(if)-had he-it from anyone before heard,

er wære benamen drûf niht komen.
he were assuredly there-on not come.

als er den künic her sach gên,
when he the king hither saw go,

dô begunde er von dem steine stên.
then began he from the stone to-stand.

sîn gebærde diu was sæliclich:
his bearing it was blessed:

die hende habtę er vür sich
the hands held he before himself

vil harte gezogenlîche.
very very courteously.

künc Artûs der rîche
king Arthur the rich

der hiez in willekomen sîn,
he bade him welcome be,

und diu edel künigîn;
and the noble queen;

dar nâch diu mässenîe gar.
there after the household wholly.

si nâmen an im beider war
they took in him of-both heed

lîbes unde muotes:
of-body and of-mind:

dône vundens niht wan guotes,
then found-they nothing but good,

wand er was alles valsches blôz;
for he was of-all falseness bare;

dar zuo was sîn sælde grôz;
there to was his blessedness great;

der beider er von rehte gęnôz.
of-the both he by right enjoyed.

Der künic vrâgęt in [der] mære
The king asked him [for-the] tidings

war er wolde od wer er wære.
whither he would or who he were.

er sprach ‘herre, niwan her;
he spoke ‘lord, only hither;

ichn kan iu niht gesagen wer
I can to-you not tell who

ich von mînem vater bin.’
I from my father am.’

der [edel] künìc bat aber in
the [noble] king begged again him

im sagen sînen namen sâ
to-him tell his name at-once

und mit im belîben dâ.
and with him remain there.

er sprach 'herre, daz sî getân;
he spoke 'lord, that be done;

ich wilz iuch gerne wizzen lân:
I will-it you gladly know let:

Gwî von Gâlois bin ich genant.
Gwi of Galois am I named.

beslozzen ist daz selbe lant
enclosed is the same land

von danne ich bin geborn.
from where I am born.

ze herren hân ich iuch erkorn,
as lord have I you chosen,

ob ir geruochèt behalten mich;
if you deign to-keep me;

mit mînem dienest wolde ich
with my service would I

erwerben des ich [ie] hân gegert,
win what I [ever] have desired,

ob ich der êren wære wert,
if I of-the honors were worthy,

daz ich rîter würde hie;
that I knight should-become here;

des hân ich gedinget ie,
of-that have I hoped ever,

wan diu werlt alsô zergêt
for the world so perishes

daz nimmer dehein hof gestêt
that never any court stands

mit sô ganzer rîterschaft;
with so whole knighthood;

aller vreuden überkraft
of-all joys abundance

hân ich in kurzen stunden
have I in short hours

in iuwerm hove vunden.
in your court found.

enpfâhẹt mich als ichs hân gegert!'
receive me as I-it have desired!'

er sprach 'juncherre, sît gewert
he spoke 'young-lord, be granted

aller iuwer bete hie.'
of-all your request here.'

in sîn genâde er in enpfie
into his grace he him received

und bevalch in an der stet,
and commended him in the place,

nâch der küniginne bet,
after the queen's request,

sînem vater, dẹm herren Gâwein.
to-his father, the lord Gawein.

dô was under in zwein
then was between them two

diu grôze triuwe unbekant
the great faith unknown

die kint ie ze vater vant:
which child ever toward father found:

ir deweder erkante dẹn andern dâ.
of-them neither knew the other there.

her Gâwein underwant sich sâ
lord Gawein undertook himself at-once

des knabẹn mit sîner lêre;
of-the boy with his teaching;

des gewan er vrum und êre.
of-that gained he profit and honor.

den besten was er undertân;
to-the best was he subject;

mit redẹ ḥêt er den valschen man;
with speech hated he the false man;

ir deheinẹn er nie ze vînt gewan.
of-them any he never as foe won.

Dem künige wart er heimlîch
To-the king became he intimate

und diente im aller tägelîch
and served him of-all daily

als er beste kunde.
as he best could.

den von der tavelrunde
to-those of the round-table

was er allen vil bereit:
was he to-all very ready:

ze turnein er mit in reit,
to tournament he with them rode,

und swâ man manheit begie,
and wherever one manhood performed,

dâ versûmte er sich nie
there neglected he himself never

ern wær zevorderst an der schar;
unless-he were foremost in the troop;

si muosen ẹs alle nemen war.
they must of-it all take heed.

sîn manheit diu was harte grôz;
his manhood it was very great;

gelückes er dar zuo genôz
of-luck he there to enjoyed

daz im vil selten missegie,
that to-him very seldom miscarried,

wand er hêt vor ougen ie
for he had before eyes ever

got, der die sînen nie verlie.
God, who the his never left.

Dô dem künige wart geseit
When to-the king became told

sîn vil grôziu manheit,
his very great manhood,

des wundert in und wart sîn vrô.
of-that wondered him and became of-it glad.

eine hôchzît gebôt er dô;
a festival commanded he then;

dar kom manic vürste rîch.
thither came many-a prince rich.

diu hôchzît wart vil lobelîch
the festival became very praiseworthy

dâ der knappe nam daz swert.
where the squire took the sword.

er was wol rîterschefte wert;
he was well of-knighthood worth;

die enpfienc ouch er mit vreuden dâ.
it received also he with joys there.

diu küniginne sande im sâ
the queen sent him at-once

sehs rîter kleider;
six knight's garments;

diu wâren der beider
they were of-the both

von scharlach und von pfelle.
of scarlet and of brocade.

her Gâwein, sîn geselle,
lord Gawein, his companion,

gap im ein ravît daz was guot;
gave him a charger which was good;

daz vreute sêre sînen muot.
that rejoiced sorely his mind.

der künic im zwelf knappen liez;
the king to-him twelve squires let;

dar zuo er im geben hiez
there to he to-him give bade

swaz er haben solde,
whatever he have should,

iegelîchez als er wolde.
each as he would.

daz geschach, als ich iu sage,
that happened, as I to-you tell,

an dem heiligen pfingestage
on the holy Pentecost-day

daz der knappe swert nam.
that the squire sword took.

und als er messe vernam,
and when he mass heard,

die pfaffen gâben im den segen.
the priests gave him the blessing.

dô gurte umbe sich der degen
then girded about himself the thane

ein swert, daz dehein man
a sword, than-which any man

nie dhein bezzèrz gewan.
never any better won.

ez half im sît ûz manger nôt,
it helped him afterward out-of many-a distress,

er behieltz ouch unz an sînen tôt;
he kept-it also until to his death;

daz gap im her Gâwein dâ.
that gave him lord Gawein there.

der milte künic reichte im sâ
the generous king reached to-him at-once

den schilt selbe und einen schaft.
the shield self and a shaft.

sich huop dâ michel rîterschaft
itself raised there great knighthood

und schœne buhurdieren
and beautiful jousting

mit rîchen banieren.
with rich banners.

sus wart her Gwîgâlois ze man
thus became lord Gwigalois to man

mit rîterschefte ûf der plân;
with knighthood on the plain;

der künic hêt wol zim getân.
the king had well to-him done.

Dô sich der buhurt zerlie,
When itself the joust dissolved,

der künic ûf den sal gie,
the king up-to the hall went,

mit im der junge swertdegen —
with him the young sword-thane—

der kunde wol der êren pflegen, —
he could well of-the honors take-care,—

dar nâch die rîter über al.
there after the knights over all.

sich huop dar inne grôzer schal
itself raised there in great clamor

und manger hande seitspil;
and many-a kind string-music;

floiten und tambûren vil
flutes and drums many

die hullen wider eịn ander dâ.
they resounded against one another there.

der milte künic vuorte in sâ
the generous king led him at-once

zuo der tavelrunde
to the round-table

und gap im an der stunde
and gave him at the hour

der taveln reht unde stat,
of-the table right and place,

als in diu mässenîe bat.
as him the household begged.

ouch gap er im ze [gẹ]sellen sâ
also gave he him as [com]panion at-once

den aller tiursten rîter dâ:
the of-all dearest knight there:

daz was mîn herre Gâwein,
that was my lord Gawein,

der ie gar âne wandel schein;
who ever wholly without blemish shone;

des wurdens beide harte vrô.
of-that became-they both very glad.

den spilliuten gap man dô
to-the minstrels gave one then

pfärit, silber und gewant;
palfreys, silver and clothing;

si wurden alle sâ zehant
they became all straightway at-once

von den gâben rîche
from the gifts rich

und lobten alle gelîche
and praised all alike

den rîter und die hôchzît.
the knight and the festival.

si spilten alle en widerstrît
they played all in rivalry

vor der tavelrunde,
before the round-table,

iegelîcher als er kunde.
each as he could.

man gap in allen wirtschaft
one gave them all hospitality

und alles des die überkraft
and of-all that the abundance

des man zem lîbe gerte.
which one for-the body desired.

diu hôchzît diu werte
the festival it lasted

mit vreuden dâ, als ich iu sage,
with joys there, as I to-you tell,

nâch pfingesten vierzehen tage.
after Pentecost fourteen days.

dô diu ende hêt genomen,
when it end had taken,

die geste die dar wâren komen
the guests who thither were come

die nâmen alle urloup dâ
they took all leave there

ze hove und ouch anderswâ.
at court and also elsewhere.

dô hiez der künic Artûs
then bade the king Arthur

tragen in sîn muoshûs
carry into his dining-hall

die pfelle ungeschrôten,
the brocades uncut,

mangen samît rôten,
many-a samite red,

grâ, härmîn unde bunt;
gray, ermine and parti-colored;

dar zuo gap er manic pfunt
there to gave he many-a pound

und schœniu ros den gesten;
and beautiful horses to-the guests;

er kunde wol enbresten
he could well bestow

ieglîchem nâch sîner werdicheit;
to-each after his worthiness;

sîn guot was dô der werlt bereit,
his goods were then to-the world ready,

als man noch hiute von im seit.
as one yet today of him tells.

Mit urloubẹ ritens alle dan,
With leave rode-they all away,

als ich iu geseit hân,
as I to-you told have,

iegelîcher heim ze lande.
each home to land.

der künic hêt ân schande
the king had without disgrace

die hôchzît gehabẹt alsô
the festival held so

daz sîn daz liut was allez vrô
that of-him the people were all glad

dô siz alsus verenden.
when they-it thus ended.

zen næhsten sunewenden,
at-the next solstice,

dô der künic ze tische saz
when the king at table sat

und innen des dô er az,
and inside of-that when he ate,

kom ein maget rîche
came a maiden rich

geriten hövischlîche
ridden courteously

mit ir getwerge ûf den sal,
with her dwarf up-into the hall,

dâ die rîter über al
where the knights over all

an dem tische sâzen,
at the table sat,

trunken unde âzen.
drank and ate.

si reit ein phärit daz was blanc;
she rode a palfrey which was white;

ir getwerc huop ûf unde sanc
her dwarf raised up and sang

ein liet sô wünniclîche
a song so delightfully

daz sị alle gelîche
that they all alike

ir selber vergâzen
themselves self forgot

die in dem sale sâzen.
who in the hall sat.

als ez ist geseit mir,
as it is told me,

ûf dem phärit hinder ir
upon the palfrey behind her

stuont ez, swar si reit;
stood it, wherever she rode;

1735 ûf ir ahseln hêt ẹz geleit
upon her shoulders had it laid

sîne hende beide.
its hands both.

diu maget vuortẹ ze kleide
the maiden wore as clothing

ein scharlaches kappen an.
a scarlet cape on.

si was sô rehte wol getân
she was so right well made

1740 daz ir des prîses jâhen
that to-her the prize granted

alle die si gesâhen.
all who her saw.

ir houbt was ungebunden,
her head was unbound,

ir zöpfe wol bewunden
her braids well wound

mit golde unz an daz ende;
with gold until to the end;

1745 deheiner slahte gebende
of-no kind headdress

vuortẹ diu maget mêre.
wore the maiden more.

diu juncvrouwe hêre
the young-lady noble

reit dâ si den künic sach.
rode where she the king saw.

vil gezogenlîche si dô sprach
very courteously she then spoke

1750 ‘herrẹ ḥer künic, mich hât gesant
‘lord lord king, me has sent

mîn vrouwe her in iuwer lant;
my lady hither into your land;

ir dienest hât si iu enboten.
her service has she to-you sent-word.

bî deheinem andern boten
by no other messenger

wolde sị iuz enbieten.
would she you-it send-word.

ir vriunde ir daz rieten 1755
her friends to-her that counseled

daz si helfe suochte hie:
that she help sought here:

von disem hove sagt man ie
of this court tells one ever

wie vrume rîtẹr ḥie wæren,
how valiant knights here were,

und daz si niht verbæren
and that they not should-forgo

deheiner slahte manheit. 1760
of-any kind manhood.

nu sî iu offenlîch geseit
now be to-you openly told

ein grôziu âventiure;
a great adventure;

diu ist vil ungehiure
it is very monstrous

und bitter, gelîch dem tôde gar.
and bitter, like to-the death wholly.

wer vehten welle, der hebe sich dar! 1765
whoever fight will, he raise himself thither!

des vindet er dâ vil guot stat.
for-that finds he there very good place.

er wirt sîn âne zwîvel sat,
he becomes of-it without doubt sated,

wan dâ ist manger tôt gelegen.'
for there is many-a-one dead lain.'

Gwîgâlois, der tiure degen,
Gwigalois, the dear thane,
stuont ûf zer selben stunde
stood up at-the same hour
von der tavelrunde —
from the round-table—
mit urloube wart daz getân, —
with leave became that done,—
vür den künic gienc er stân.
before the king went he to-stand.
er sprach 'lieber herre mîn,
he spoke 'dear lord mine,
nu lât an mir daz werden schîn
now let in me that become seen
daz ir niemen niht verseit;
that you to-no-one nothing refuse;
iuwer gâbe ist allen den bereit
your gift is to-all those ready
die ir von iu geruochent,
who it from you desire,
swâ siz ze rehte suochent:
wherever they-it by right seek:
gewert mich, herre, des ich ger;
grant me, lord, what I desire;
sô hât mich diu Sælde her
so has me the Blessedness hither
wol geleitet mîne tage;
well led my days;
mîner swære die ich trage
of-my heaviness which I bear
der wirde ich ledic sâ zehant.
of-it become I free straightway at-once.

herre künic, nu sît gemant
lord king, now be reminded

daz iuwer milte mir werde erkant.'
that your generosity to-me become known.'

Dô daz gesinde sîne bet
When the household his request

gehôrte, die ẹr mit vlîze tet,
heard, which he with diligence made,

des nam si michel wunder
of-that took them great wonder

und swigen alle besunder.
and kept-silent all separately.

der künic sprach 'nu sît gewert
the king spoke 'now be granted

alles des ir an mich gert,
of-all that you of me desire,

daz mînem namen rehte stê
which to-my name rightly stands

und mir niht an mîn êre gê.'
and to-me not to my honor goes.'

er sprach 'ichn ger niht vürbaz
he spoke 'I desire nothing further

wan daz mir werde erloubet daz
except that to-me become allowed that

ich die âventiure hol;
I the adventure fetch;

sô habẹt ir mir gegeben wol.
so have you to-me given well.

wer weiz ob ichz erwerben sol!'
who knows whether I-it win shall!'

Diu rede wart im ungemach.
The speech became to-him displeasing.

den jungen rîter er an sach
the young knight he on looked

und was im sîn arbeit
and was to-him his toil

von allen sînen sinnen leit
from all his wits sorrowful

die er wolde lîden.
which he would suffer.

er sprach 'wolt ir vermîden
he spoke 'would you avoid

dise reise durch mînę bet,
this journey for my request,

ich wolde iuch rîchen hie ze stet.'
I would you enrich here at place.'

'neinâ, herre!' sprach er dô,
'no-indeed, lord!' spoke he then,

'jâne mac ich nimmer werden vrô
'indeed may I never become glad

irn erloubet mir die selben vart.'
unless-you allow me the same journey.'

zehant si im erloubet wart.
at-once it to-him allowed became.

daz wart der juncvrouwen leit;
that became to-the young-lady sorrowful;

mit zorne si von danne reit,
with anger she from thence rode,

daz si ze niemen niht ensprach.
that she to no-one nothing spoke.

ich sagiu wâ von daz geschach:
I tell-you where from that happened:

si vorhte daz sị ir arbeit
she feared that she her toil

verlür von sîner kintheit,
should-lose from his childhood,

durch daz er sô junc was.
for that he so young was.

si begunde vür daz palas
she began before the palace

mit grôzer klage rîten;
with great lament to-ride;

sine wolde sîn niht bîten,
she would for-him not wait,

swie wol er kunde strîten.
however well he could fight.

Sus reit si gegẹn dem walde.
Thus rode she toward the forest.

die knappen brâhtẹn im balde
the squires brought him quickly

ors, harnasch unde sper
steed, harness and spear

und einen schœnen schilt her,
and a beautiful shield hither,

der was swarz alsam ein kol;
which was black as a coal;

dâ was enmitten ûffe wol
there was in-the-middle on-it well

ein rat von rôtem golde erhaben;
a wheel of red gold raised;

daz wolde er zeinem wâfen haben
that would he as-a blazon have

dâ man in bî erkande.
where one him by knew.

diu künigîn im sande
the queen to-him sent

einen wâfenroc ze stiure
a surcoat as help

zuo der âventiure,
to the adventure,

der was mit golde durchslagen;
which was with gold shot-through;

den solde er durch ir willen tragen;
it should he for her sake wear;

des begunde er ir genâde sagen.
of-that began he to-her thanks to-say.

Nu nam er urloup von in dâ;
Now took he leave from them there;

dem milten künige neic er sâ
to-the generous king bowed he at-once

und der mässenîe gar.
and to-the household wholly.

'herre got, nu bewar
'lord God, now guard

dem rîter sînen schœnen lîp!'
to-the knight his beautiful body!'

sprach dâ man unde wîp;
spoke there man and woman;

si wunschtẹn im alle heiles nâch.
they wished to-him all salvation after.

dem rîter was zer vreise gâch,
to-the knight was to-the peril hasty,

wand er hêt eins lewen muot:
for he had a lion's mind:

swaz vreislîch was daz dûhte in guot;
whatever fearful was that seemed to-him good;

des kom er ofte in grôze nôt.
through-that came he often into great distress.

sîn dienest er in allen bôt;
his service he to-them all offered;

sus nam er urloup in den tôt. 1850
thus took he leave into the death.

VII · THE GIANTS

Gwigalois overtakes the maiden, who scorns him for not being Gawein. She warns of a host who fights every knight; Gwigalois kills him with a lance-thrust he did not intend. In the night they hear cries: two giants are holding a maiden carried off from Arthur's court. He kills one and defeats the other, who must swear to take the maiden back to Arthur as his prisoner.

Her Gâwein dô mit im gie:
Lord Gawein then with him went:

von des râte kom er nie.
from whose counsel came he never.

ir geselleschaft was harte guot:
their companionship was very good:

beidiu ir herze und ir muot
both their heart and their mind

wârn einander heimlîch; 1855
were to-one-another intimate;

deiswâr, daz was billîch,
truly, that was fitting,

sît ṣi eines lîbes wâren.
since they of-one body were.

ir ougen ẹs niht verbâren
their eyes of-it nothing forbore

sine lachten ofte ein ander an.
unless-they laughed often one another on.

her Gâwein, der küene man, 1860
lord Gawein, the bold man,

wâfent in selbẹ mit sîner hant;
armed him self with his hand;

einen helm er im ûf bant,
a helm he to-him on bound,

dar ûf ein rat von golde gie.
there upon a wheel of gold went.

daz wâfen minnẹt der rîter ie,
the blazon loved the knight ever,

wand einez gienc ûf und zetal
for one went up and down

mit listen in sîns neven sal:
with cunning in his nephew's hall:

durch daz truoc er daz rat,
for that wore he the wheel,

als in des sîn herze bat,
as him of-that his heart begged,

zeiner zimiere.
as-a crest.

ein rîchiu baniere
a rich banner

wart im gebunden an sîn sper.
became to-him bound on his spear.

ûf sin ors saz er;
upon his steed sat he;

daz was starc unde guot;
it was strong and good;

des wart der rîter wol gemuot.
of-that became the knight well minded.

schilt und sper reicht man im dar;
shield and spear reached one to-him there;

dô was er gewâfent gar.
then was he armed wholly.

den hern Gâwein bevalch er got;
the lord Gawein commended he to-God;

vil grôzer jâmer âne spot
very great grief without mockery

wart dâ zwischen in beiden
became there between them both

dô si sich muosen scheiden. 1880
when they themselves must part.

sus reit her Gwîgâlois von dan.
thus rode lord Gwigalois from thence.

im bat dâ guotes manic man;
for-him begged there good many-a man;

dâ von muos er gelücke hân.
there from must he luck have.

Der mägde îlte er balde nâch.
The maiden hastened he quickly after.

vor zorne was ir alsô gâch 1885
from anger was to-her so hasty

daz sị sîn niht wolde bîten;
that she for-him not would wait;

deste balder muose er rîten.
the-more quickly must he ride.

dô daz getwerc den rîter sach,
when the dwarf the knight saw,

ze sîner juncvrouwen ez [dô] sprach
to its young-lady it [then] spoke

'dort kumt der rîter her geriten; 1890
'there comes the knight hither ridden;

des solde wir dâ hân gebiten:
of-that should we there have waited:

des hêt er êre und stüende iu wol.
of-that would-have he honor and would-stand to-you well.

ez kumt vil lîhte daz im sol
it comes very easily that to-him shall

dirre prîs gevallen
this prize fall

vor den rîtern allen;
before the knights all;

er ist lîhte als manhaft
he is perhaps as manly

und hât alsô grôze kraft
and has so great strength

sam der aller tiurste dâ.'
as the of-all most-precious there.'

diu juncvrouwe sprach 'nu lâ
the young-lady spoke 'now leave

die rede, wan diu ist enwiht;
the speech, for it is naught;

ich erkenne disse rîters niht:
I know of-this knight nothing:

her Gâwein wart mir genant;
lord Gawein became to-me named;

den erkennet man übẹr älliu lant
him knows one over all lands

von sîner grôzen manheit.
for his great manhood.

swaz er strîtes ie gestreit,
whatever he of-strife ever fought,

daz im dar an nie missegie,
that to-him there in never miscarried,

daz hôrte ich von im sagen ie.
that heard I of him say ever.

der wær mit uns geriten dan,
he were with us ridden away,

hêt dirre sîne bet verlân;
had this-one his request left;

dâvon ich im niht êren gan.’
there-from I to-him no honors grant.’

Dô si die rede gar gesprach,
When she the speech wholly spoke,

den jungen rîter si dô sach
the young knight she then saw

ennebẹn ir rîten sâ zehant.
beside her ride straightway at-once.

den helm vuort er in einer hant,
the helm carried he in one hand,

entwâfent was sîn houbet.
unarmed was his head.

er sprach ‘vrouwe, erloubet
he spoke ‘lady, allow

mir daz ich mit iu var.’
me that I with you fare.’

daz widersaget si im gar.
that refused she him wholly.

dô bat er si sô sêre
then begged he her so sorely

unz daz diu maget hêre
until that the maiden noble

in dô mit ir rîten hiez.
him then with her ride bade.

dô si ir zorn ein teil verliez
when she her anger a part let-go

und ir grôziu swære,
and her great heaviness,

dô saget er ir mære
then told he her tales

und kurzet ir die stunde,
and shortened for-her the hours,

als er beste kunde,
as he best could,

unz daz der âbent ane gie.
until that the evening on went.

si sprach 'rîter, râtet wie
she spoke 'knight, counsel how

od wâ wir hînt belîben
or where we tonight remain

dâ wir die naht vertrîben.'
where we the night pass.'

'liebiu vrouwe, swâ ir welt.'
'dear lady, wherever you will.'

si sprach 'ich weiz einen helt,
she spoke 'I know a hero,

des hûs ist hie nâhen bî;
whose house is here near by;

ichn weiz ab wie sîn nam sî,
I-not know but how his name be,

wan ein dinc ist mir bekant:
except one thing is to-me known:

ez ist umb in alsô gewant:
it is about him so turned:

er hât wunderlîche sit,
he has wondrous customs,

dâ er sîn brôt vristet mit.
where he his bread preserves with.

desn ist deheiner slahte rât:
of-it is of-no kind remedy:

swer sô rîters namen hât,
whoever so knight's name has,

wil er des nahtes dâ ruowe hân,
(if)-will he of-the night there rest have,

ern müeze in eine bestân
unless-he must him alone withstand

ûf dem veldẹ mit rîterschaft.
upon the field with knighthood.

und ist er dan sô manhaft
and (if)-is he then so manly

daz er in überwindet,
that he him overcomes,

ich sagiu daz: er vindet
I tell-you that: he finds

von gemache dâ swes er gert,
of comfort there whatever he desires,

wand er wirt von im gewert
for he becomes by him granted

sô guoter handelunge dâ
so good treatment there

die niemen vünde anderswâ.
which no-one should-find elsewhere.

stichẹt ab in der wirt nider,
(if)-stabs but him the host down,

sô muoz er danne blôzer wider
so must he then barer back

scheiden gar ân sîne habe.
part wholly without his goods.

mich dunket guot wir tuon uns abe
to-me seems good we do ourselves off

der ruowe und rîten anderswâ:
of-the rest and ride elsewhere:

sị ist bœse ze gewinnen dâ.'
it is bad to win there.'

diu rede misseviel im sâ.
the speech displeased him at-once.

Er sprach ‘vrouwe, nein, durch got!
He spoke ‘lady, no, for God!

ich wil allez iuwẹr gebot
I will all your command

leisten an andern dingen;
fulfill in other things;

mir muoz hie gelingen,
to-me must here succeed,

od ich verliuse swaz ich hân.’
or I lose whatever I have.’

er was des muotes gar ein man,
he was of-the mind wholly a man,

wand er dáz nie gevlôch
for he that never fled

swaz ze manheit gezôch
whatever to manhood belonged

dâne wære er starke gerne mit;
unless-there were he strongly gladly with;

daz was von kinde ie sîn sit.
that was from child ever his custom.

daz hûs was im sô nâhen
the house was to-him so near

daz si dar abe sâhen
that they there down saw

den gast gewâfent rîten.
the guest armed ride.

der wirt wolde niht bîten;
the host would not wait;

sînen harnasch hiez er bringen.
his harness bade he bring.

er wânde im solde gelingen
he believed to-him should succeed

als im ofte ê was getân.
as to-him often before was done.

leider, dô trouc in sîn wân!
alas, then deceived him his belief!

im was ze gâch an die vart.
to-him was too hasty to the journey.

zehant als er gewâfent wart,
at-once when he armed became,

dô brâhten im die knappen dar
then brought him the squires there

ein ors, daz was bedecket gar
a steed, which was covered wholly

mit einer grôpiere.
with a crupper.

der wirt was vil schiere
the host was very quickly

ûf daz ors gesprungen.
upon the steed sprung.

die garzûn nâch im drungen;
the pages after him pressed;

die truogen schilt unde sper.
they carried shield and spear.

si liefen ûz nâch im her
they ran out after him hither

vaste vür den burcgraben.
fast before the castle-moat.

si wolden daz gewis haben
they would that certain have

si würden alle rîche;
they would-become all rich;

dô geriet ez mislîche.
then turned-out it otherwise.

der gast den helm ûf bant;
the guest the helm up bound;

von der strâze kêrt er zehant
from the road turned he at-once

gegẹn dem wirte ûf die plân.
toward the host onto the plain.

si liezen zuo einander gân
they let to one-another go

swaz diu ors mohten gevarn.
whatever the steeds might fare.

si kundẹn sich beide wol bewarn;
they could themselves both well guard;

iedoch sô stach der junge gast
yet so stabbed the young guest

sîn sper daz ez durch in brast
his spear that it through him burst

ander halbe eins klâfters lanc.
on-the-other side a fathom long.

ez geschach ein teil ân sînen danc
it happened a part without his will

daz er in alsô hêt erslagen;
that he him so had slain;

daz wil ich iu vür wâr sagen,
that will I to-you for true tell,

wand er begundẹz von herzen klagen.
for he began-it from heart to-lament.

Sich huop ein jæmerlîchiu nôt
Itself raised a wretched distress

dô si gesâhen daz er tôt
when they saw that he dead

von dem orse viel ûf daz gras.
from the steed fell onto the grass.

swaz dâ ingesindes was,
whatever there of-household was,

daz huop sich mit klage dar.
that raised itself with lament thither.

diu juncvrouwe sprach '[nu] nemt war
the young-lady spoke '[now] take heed

welch ein mort ir habt getân!
what a murder you have done!

wir mugen hie nu niht bestân;
we may here now not remain;

wir sulen vürbaz rîten,
we shall further ride,

dâ wir des tages bîten,
where we the day await,

ê si hie mit uns strîten.'
before they here with us fight.'

Der geschiht wâren sị vil unvrô;
Of-the event were they very unglad;

von dem tôten îlten sị dô
from the dead-man hastened they then

bî einem wazzer hin ze tal.
by a water thither to dale.

dâ hôrten si die nahtegal
there heard they the nightingale

singen vaste gegẹn der naht.
sing loudly toward the night.

daz gevilde was bedaht
the field was covered

mit grase und mit loube dâ.
with grass and with foliage there.

die gesellẹn enwessen wâ
the companions knew-not where

si möhten bẹlîbẹn unz an den tac.
they might remain until to the day.

ein fôreis in dâ nâhen lac;
a forest to-them there near lay;

dâ ẹrbeizte diu juncvrouwe zuo.
there dismounted the young-lady to.

si beliben dâ unz morgen vruo
they remained there until morning early

sô si beste mahten.
as they best might.

sine kunden niht betrahten
they could not consider

war si riten vürbaz;
whither they rode further;

diu ungeschiht vuocte in daz;
the misfortune brought them that;

doch tâtens als der biderbę man:
yet did-they as the worthy man:

swenne erz niht gebezzern kan,
whenever he-it not better can,

sô dunket ez in ein rât
so seems it to-him a provision

swaz er danne hât,
whatever he then has,

als ez im an die nôt gât.
when it to-him to the need goes.

Der juncvrouwen schuofen si gemach;
For-the young-lady made they comfort;

daz getwerc des grüenen loubes brach
the dwarf of-the green foliage broke

und bette ir nider ûf daz gras,
and bedded for-her down upon the grass,

wand ez an einer wisen was.
for it on a meadow was.

dô sị eine wîle gelâgen
when they a while lay

und ir gemaches pflâgen,
and of-their comfort took-care,

dô hôrtens eine stimme
then heard-they a voice

klägelîch und grimme
lamentable and grim

in dem walde, bî einem sê
in the forest, by a lake

ruofen vaste ‘wê! wê!’
cry loudly ‘woe! woe!’

als daz dâ vürhtet den tôt.
as that there fears the death.

der rîter sprach ‘hœrt ir die nôt
the knight spoke ‘hear you the distress

und die klage die daz hât?
and the lament which that has?

vrouwe, ist ez iuwer rât,
lady, is it your counsel,

sô wil ich rîten dar,
so will I ride thither,

daz ich uns rehte ervar
that I for-us rightly find-out

waz daz sî daz dâ klaget.’
what that be which there laments.’

des antwurt im diu maget;
to-that answered him the maiden;

si sprach ‘nu tuot als ir welt.’
she spoke ‘now do as you will.’

zehant dô reit der helt
at-once then rode the hero

als in lêrte sîn sin.
as him taught his mind.

diu naht was wol halbiu hin
the night was well half gone

und schein der mâne gegẹn dem tage.
and shone the moon toward the day.

sus reit der rîter nâch der klage,
thus rode the knight after the lament,

als diu stimme vor im hal,
as the voice before him echoed,

den walt ûf und ze tal.
the forest up and to dale.

der was rûch und enge;
it was rough and narrow;

durch dorne und durch gedrenge
through thorns and through thicket

vuor er wol eine mîle.
fared he well a mile.

nu sach er bî der wîle
now saw he by the while

sitzen zwêne starke risen
sit two strong giants

bî einem viure ûf den wisen,
by a fire upon the meadows,

die bî dem sêwe lâgen.
which by the lake lay.

einer juncvrouwen sị dâ pflâgen
of-a young-lady they there took-care

leider übẹr ir willen.
alas against her will.

sine mohten sị niht gestillen
they might her not still

mit deheiner slahte bet:
with of-any kind request:

daz trûten ir unsanfte tet,
the caressing to-her harshly did,

wan si was in gar ze kranc.
for she was for-them wholly too weak.

sus wolden sị über ir danc
thus would they against her will

ir willẹn mit ir gehabet hân;
their will with her had have;

des wart ir jâmẹr alsô getân
of-that became her grief so made

daz ez in muose erbarmen.
that it him must pity.

si hêt mit beiden armen
her had with both arms

der eine an sich gedrücket.
the one to himself pressed.

si hêten si gezücket
they had her snatched

dem milten künige Artûs
from-the generous king Arthur

ze Karidôl vor sînem hûs;
at Karidol before his house;

des was michel klage dâ.
of-that was great lament there.

die edeln rîtẹr enwessen wâ
the noble knights knew-not where

si hin wâren gekêret;
they thither were turned;

des was ir herze gesêret
of-that was their heart wounded

und ouch der hof gunêret.
and also the court dishonored.

Dô der rîter rehte ersach
When the knight rightly saw

der juncvrouwen ungemach,
the young-lady's distress,

daz begunde im an sîn herze gân.
that began to-him to his heart go.

ezn sol ouch noch dhein biderbẹ man
it shall also yet any worthy man

nimmer gerne übersehen,
never gladly overlook,

swâ dehein schade mac geschehen
wherever any harm may happen

deheinem reinen wîbe,
to-any pure woman,

ern wendez mit sîn̤em lîbe;
unless-he turn-it-away with his body;

daz ist mîn sit und ouch mîn rât,
that is my custom and also my counsel,

wan swaz diu werlt vreude hât,
for whatever the world of-joy has,

diu kumt uns von den wîben.
it comes to-us from the women.

wie möhte wir vertrîben
how might we pass

die langen naht und unser leit
the long night and our sorrow

niwan mit ir sælicheit?
except with their blessedness?

unser vreude wære enwiht
our joy were naught

und hête wir der wîbe niht.
and (if)-had we the women not.

got müez in genædic wesen!
God may to-them gracious be!

wirn möhten ân si niht genesen.
we might without them not survive.

daz bedâhte der rîter guot,
that bethought the knight good,

wand er was ie vil wol gemuot,
for he was ever very well minded,

als der biderbe gerne tuot.
as the worthy-one gladly does.

Sîn ors nam er mit den sporn;
His steed took he with the spurs;

den einen risen hêt ẹr erkorn
the one giant had he chosen

dâ er bî dem viure saz.
where he by the fire sat.

mit dem sper stach er daz
with the spear stabbed he that

ez im durch daz herze brast.
it to-him through the heart burst.

der ander rise zarte einẹn ast
the other giant tore a branch

von einem boume, der was grôz;
from a tree, which was great;

des er iedoch niht vil genôz.
of-that he yet not much enjoyed.

[wand er sich in die este slôz]
[*for he himself into the branches locked*]

der rîter ouch erbeizet was
the knight also dismounted was

zuo zim ûf daz grüene gras
to him onto the green grass

und liefen beide einander an.
and ran both one-another at.

si wârn zwêne bereite man
they were two ready men

des muotes sam der kraft;
of-the mind as of-the strength;

daz schein wol an ir rîterschaft.
that showed well in their knighthood.

der rise mit dem aste
the giant with the branch

treip in harte vaste
drove him very fast

hinder sich in ein dickez hac,
behind himself into a thick hedge,

daz dâ nâhen bî im lac;
which there near by him lay;

dâ ẹntweich der edel rîter in.
there escaped the noble knight him.

daz tet er niwan durch den sin
that did he only for the purpose

daz er in slüege ân sînen schaden:
that he him should-slay without his harm:

sô kunde er in ze hûse laden.
so could he him to house invite.

dô ẹnpfie der rise wunden vil.
then received the giant wounds many.

sus spilten si des tôdes spil
thus played they the death's game

unz daz der tac ûf gie.
until that the day up went.

eine wunden dô der rise enpfie
a wound then the giant received

von im, diu nam im sîne kraft;
from him, which took from-him his strength;

des wart der rîter sigehaft.
of-that became the knight victorious.

in sîn gewalt muos er sich geben
into his power must he himself give

durch daz er in lieze leben;
for that he him should-let live;

dar über swuor er einen eit
there over swore he an oath

daz er die maget âne leit
that he the maiden without sorrow

bræhte dem künige Artûs
should-bring to-the king Arthur

ze Karidôl widẹr in sîn hûs,
to Karidol back into his house,

unde sîn dar inne bit
and for-him there in should-wait

unz er dar nâch im rit;
until he there after him rode;

hie was er gevangen mit.
here was he captured with-it.

VIII · THE WHITE BRACHET

The giant brings the maiden to Arthur's court. Gwigalois catches a little white brachet for the maiden, which delights her, but a knight in green claims it and threatens them; Gwigalois kills him in a joust. The poet laments that knighthood has decayed and slander of women has grown. A beautiful maiden rides past them alone, weeping, and Gwigalois asks to learn her sorrow.

Bî den zîten was der sit: —
By the times was the custom:—

dâ behielten si ir triuwe mit —
there kept they their faith with—

swer deheinen eit zebrach,
whoever any oath broke,

swâ man den immer mê gesach,
wherever one him ever more saw,

der was ungenæme,
he was unpleasing,

den liuten widerzæme,
to-the people repugnant,

als der tôtsieche man
as the death-sick man

der von der werlte wirt getân.
who from the world becomes put.

des muosen sị ir sicherheit,
for-that must they their surety,

ez wær in liep ode leit,
it were to-them dear or sorrowful,

behalten, als man in gebôt,
keep, as one them commanded,

od an den êren ligen tôt;
or in the honors lie dead;

des wær ouch noch der werlte nôt.
of-that were also yet the world's need.

Nu hêt sich diu reine maget
Now had herself the pure maiden

beidiu verweinet und verklaget
both wept-out and lamented-out

daz si vil kûme mohte geleben.
that she very scarcely might live.

dô wart ir ein trôst gegeben
then became to-her a comfort given

daz si wider solde varn.
that she back should fare.

den tôten mohtens niht bewarn;
the dead-man might-they not guard;

der lac dâ als im gezam.
he lay there as to-him befitted.

der rise die juncvrouwen nam,
the giant the young-lady took,

als der rîter im gebôt.
as the knight him commanded.

sîns lieben gesellen tôt
his dear companion's death

klagte er âne mâze.
lamented he without measure.

sus vuorens âne strâze
thus fared-they without road

unz er die juncvrouwen vant;
until he the young-lady found;

diu begunde sâ zehant
she began straightway at-once

ûf ir wec rîten:
upon her way to-ride:

sine wolde sîn niht bîten.
she would for-him not wait.

der rise nam urloup [von im] dâ;
the giant took leave [from him] there;

engegęn Britanje gienc er sâ
toward Britain went he at-once

und brâhtę die maget hêre
and brought the maiden noble

der küniginne Ginovêre
to-the queen Ginover

und dem künige Artûs
and to-the king Arthur

ze Karidôl widęr in sîn hûs.
to Karidol back into his house.

des wart diu mässenîe vrô;
of-that became the household glad;

dem edeln rîter gnâdętens dô
the noble knight thanked-they then

der triuwen und der êren.
for-the faith and for-the honors.

der [rîter] begunde kêren
the [knight] began to-turn
sîner juncvrouwen nâch.
his young-lady after.
der was von im harte gâch,
to-her was from him very hasty,
wand ez was ir vil leit
for it was to-her very sorrowful
daz er iender mit ir reit.
that he anywhere with her rode.
swaz er manheit begie,
whatever he of-manhood performed,
die wolde si geprîsen nie:
it would she praise never:
ez dûhte sị allez kleine
it seemed to-her all small
wider die al eine
against those all alone
diu im ze tuone sît geschach.
which to-him to do afterward happened.
gezogenlîche der rîter sprach
courteously the knight spoke
‘edliu maget, hœret mich!
‘noble maiden, hear me!
erloubet mir, vrouwe, daz ich
allow me, lady, that I
mit iu rîte disen tac.’
with you ride this day.’
wand er solher zühte pflac
for he such breeding practiced
daz er daz bewarte ie
that he that guarded ever
daz er widẹr ir willen nie
that he against her will never

deheiner slahte dinc getet
of-any kind thing did

ern erwürbez ê mit sîner bet;
unless-he won-it before with his request;

daz bescheinder ir an manger stet.
that showed-he to-her in many-a place.

Daz getwerc begunde mit im biten
The dwarf began with him to-beg

unz si si des überstriten
until they her of-that outargued

daz sị im sîn gunde.
that she to-him of-it granted.

an derselben stunde
at-the same hour

lief vor in ein bräkelîn
ran before them a little-brachet

daz niht schœners mohte sîn.
than-which nothing more-beautiful might be.

daz was blanc über al;
it was white over all;

niwan ein ôre was im val,
only one ear was to-it fallow,

daz ander rôt alsam ein bluot.
the other red as a blood.

des wart diu maget wol gemuot,
of-that became the maiden well minded,

wande si des selbe jach
for she of-that self said

daz si nie dẹheinèz gesach
that she never any saw

daz ir z'ihte mære
which to-her in-aught dearer

wider daz selbe wære.
against that same were.

des wart der rîter harte vrô.
of-that became the knight very glad.

daz hündelîn vienc er dô
the little-hound caught he then

und legtez vür si ûf ir kleit.
and laid-it before her upon her garment.

des wart diu maget vil gemeit;
of-that became the maiden very merry;

mit grôzen vreuden si dô reit.
with great joys she then rode.

Ditz was nâch mittem morgen.
This was after mid morning.

si riten âne sorgen
they rode without cares

gegen einem vinstern tan;
toward a dark wood;

dar ûz reit ein michel man,
there out-of rode a great man,

des hâr was swarz alsam ein kol,
whose hair was black as a coal,

ieslîch loc bewunden wol
each lock wound well

mit sîden und mit golde,
with silk and with gold,

gezieret als er wolde.
adorned as he would.

sîn ros swarz unde guot.
his horse black and good.

von bluomen vuorte er einen huot;
of flowers wore he a hat;

mit [grüenem] tymît was er gekleit.
in [green] samite was he clad.

zer geselleschefte er reit.
to-the company he rode.

si wârn ein ander unbekant.
they were one other unknown.

einen knüttel vuorte er in der hant,
a cudgel carried he in the hand,

mit riemen wol bewunden.
with straps well wound.

ich wæne er mit den hunden
I believe he with the hounds

was geriten in den walt.
was ridden into the forest.

sîn muot ze zorne wart gestalt
his mind to anger became shaped

dô er sîn hündelîn ersach.
when he his little-hound saw.

wider die juncvrouwen er sprach
against the young-lady he spoke

'ir sult wizzen, vrouwelîn,
'you shall know, little-lady,

dirre kleine hunt ist mîn.
this little hound is mine.

seit mir, wer hât iu'n gegeben?
tell me, who has to-you-it given?

benamen ẹz gêt im an sîn leben!'
assuredly it goes to-him on his life!'

si sprach 'dirre rîter hie.'
she spoke 'this knight here.'

er sprach 'wie getorst ir ie
he spoke 'how dared you ever

gevâhen mînen schœnen hunt?
catch my beautiful hound?

heizẹten lâzẹn an dirre stunt
bid-it let at this hour

balde ûf die strâze nider,
quickly onto the road down,

oder irn komt nimmer wider
or you come never back

mit dẹheinen iuwern êren
with any your honors

und müezt wider kêren
and must back turn

mit ungesundem lîbe.'
with unwhole body.'

'diu rede zæme einẹm wîbe'
'the speech would-befit a woman'

sprach her Gwîgâlois der degen,
spoke lord Gwigalois the thane,

'und wil unser got pflegen,
'and will of-us God take-care,

sô sul wir êre unde leben
so shall we honor and life

umb sô lîhte sachẹ niht geben.
for so slight matter not give.

ich wæn der hunt ist iuwer niht;
I believe the hound is yours not;

muot ir anders von uns iht
(if)-desire you otherwise from us aught

nach êren und mit minnen,
after honors and with love,

daz mugt ir wol gewinnen.
that may you well win.

swaz ab uns da von geschiht,
whatever but to-us there from happens,

wirn geben iu des hundes niht
we give you of-the hound nothing

durch bœse rede noch durch drô.'
for wicked speech nor for threat.'

mit zorne kêrte der herre dô
with anger turned the lord then

über daz [breite] gevilde
over the [broad] field

gegen der [grôzen] wilde,
toward the [great] wilderness,

swaz daz ros mohte gevarn.
whatever the horse might fare.

her Gwîgâlois muose sich bewarn
lord Gwigalois must himself guard

als er beste kunde,
as he best could,

wand er zer selben stunde
for he at-the same hour

gwâfent dar wider wolde komen;
armed there back would come;

als hêten siz von im vernomen.
so had they-it from him heard.

des wart der rîter harte vrô,
of-that became the knight very glad,

wan sîn muot der stuont alsô
for his mind it stood so

ern vorhte deheines mannes drô.
he feared no man's threat.

Die strâze riten si als ê.
The road rode they as before.

ir vreude wart dô michels mê
their joy became then much more

dan ir dâ vor wære.
than to-them there before were.

mit mangem guoten mære
with many-a good tale

vertriben si die selben zît.
passed they the same time.

nu kom der rîter her durch strît
now came the knight hither for strife

gewâfent von der wilde;
armed from the wilderness;

über daz [grôze] gevilde
over the [great] field

kom er gewalopieret.
came he galloping.

sîn helm der was gezieret
his helm it was adorned

mit einem swanen härmîn,
with a swan of-ermine,

snabȩl und vüeze guldîn:
beak and feet golden:

ditz selbe wâfen vuort er.
this same blazon carried he.

mit hôhem muote kêrter her;
with high spirit turned-he hither;

daz schein an sînȩm geverte wol.
that showed in his bearing well.

swaz dem manne geschehen sol,
whatever to-the man happen shall,

daz geschiht im âne wende;
that happens to-him without turning;

sînes lîbes ende
of-his body's end

wær dâ vürnames niht gewesen,
were there at-all not been,

wan daz er doch niht solde genesen.
except that he yet not should survive.

nu sach der junge rîter daz.
now saw the young knight that.

sînem rosse gurte er baz,
to-his horse girded he better,

zehant er wider ûf saz;
at-once he back up sat;

ze manheit wart er nie laz.
for manhood became he never slack.

den schilt er an sich gevie,
the shield he to himself caught,

daz starke sper er sîgen lie,
the strong spear he sink let,

sîn ors er mit den sporn nam;
his steed he with the spurs took;

mit solher kraft er an in kam
with such strength he at him came

daz er daz sper durch in stach
that he the spear through him stabbed

daz man ez ander halbe sach.
that one it on-the-other side saw.

der ander schaft sô gar zebrach
the other shaft so wholly broke

daz dehein schade geschach
that no harm happened

dem rîter, als ez solde sîn.
to-the knight, as it should be.

gevrîet was daz hündelîn
freed was the little-hound

von der justiure.
by the joust.

die kirchen wârn dâ tiure;
the churches were there scarce;

des belac er ûf dem velde dâ.
of-that lay-dead he on the field there.

der rîter hafte sîn ors sâ
the knight tied his steed at-once

bi dem zoume an einen dorn.
by the bridle to a thorn.

daz wær bî disen zîten vlorn,
that were by these times lost,

als ich michs versinnen kan:
as I myself-of-it understand can:

ir ist nu wênic, sin vuortenz dan,
of-them is now few, unless-they led-it away,

man züge im nû den harnasch abe,
one would-draw from-him now the harness off,

dar zuo alle sîne habe;
there to all his goods;

daz was ab dô wider dem sit:
that was but then against the custom:

swer ez tet, der vlôs da mit
whoever it did, he lost there with

alsô gar sîn êre
so wholly his honor

daz er nimmer mêre
that he never more

ze rîterschefte mohte komen;
to knighthood might come;

im wurdẹ sîn êre gar benomen.
to-him would-become his honor wholly taken.

swer hiutẹ daz selbe tæte,
whoever today the same should-do,

sô belibe vil lîht stæte
so would-remain very likely steadfast

allez rîterlîche reht.
all knightly right.

swer vil kûme wære kneht,
whoever very scarcely were squire,

der wil nu rîter werden;
he will now knight become;

des müezen die werden
of-that must the worthy

der bœsen engelten.
for-the wicked pay.

jâ geniuzet man vil selten
indeed enjoys one very seldom

der bœsen gesellen.
of-the wicked companions.

got müeze si vellen
God may them fell

die dem immer swert gegeben
who to-him ever sword give

der daz rîterlîche leben
who the knightly life

niht behalten künne,
not keep can,

und der von sînem künne
and who from his kin

niht dar zuo sî geborn!
not there to be born!

daz alte reht hab wir verlorn.
the old right have we lost.

daz was ê guot, sô man seit;
that was before good, as one says;

mit valsche und mit bôsheit
with falseness and with wickedness

ist ez nû leider hin geleit.
is it now alas thither laid.

Dô er den sic dâ genam,
When he the victory there took,

als ez dem helde wol gezam,
as it to-the hero well befitted,

dô reit diu maget wol getân
then rode the maiden well made

mit ir geselleschefte dan
with her company away

beidiu berge unde tal,
both hills and dale,

dâ vil manic stimme hal,
where very many-a voice echoed,

grôz unde kleine.
great and small.

eine juncvrouwen al eine
a young-lady all alone

sâhen si vür sich rîten.
saw they before themselves ride.

bî den selben zîten
by the same times

was daz gewonlîch,
was that customary,

si wære arm ode rîch,
she were poor or rich,

daz si wol mohte durch ir muot
that she well might through her mind

rîten swar si dûhte guot,
ride whither her seemed good,

unbesprochẹn und âne leit.
unspoken-to and without sorrow.

daz was dô gewonheit,
that was then custom,

swâ man deheine rîten sach,
wherever one any ride saw,

daz ir niemen niht ensprach.
that to-her no-one nothing spoke.

nu ist diu werlt valschaft
now is the world false

und ist âne meisterschaft
and is without mastery

beidiu liute unde lant.
both people and land.

eine vrouwen die man hât erkant
a lady whom one has known

an ir êren stæte,
in her honors steadfast,

diu nimmer missetæte
who never should-do-amiss

durch deheiner slahte guot, —
for of-any kind goods,—

sô sint die valschen sô gemuot
so are the false so minded

daz sị sô stætè niht mac gesîn
that she so steadfast not may be

sine slahen ịr doch ein kläpfelîn
unless-they strike to-her yet a little-clap

mit worten und mit vâre.
with words and with guile.

ezn mac nû zewâre
it may now truly

ein vrouwe vür ir hûs niht komen,
a lady before her house not come,

als ichz ofte hân vernomen,
as I-it often have heard,

man spreche sị gê durch bôsheit.
one says she goes through wickedness.

reht und zuht ist hin geleit;
right and breeding is thither laid;

man kapfet nû die valschen an!
one gapes now the false on!

swer der werlt gespotten kan,
whoever the world mock can,

des lache wir und merken daz.
at-him laugh we and mark that.

deiswâr, wir tæten michel baz
truly, we would-do much better

und vlühe wir si alle tage.
and should-flee we them all days.

swer immer bœsiu mære gesage
whoever ever wicked tales tell

von den guoten wîben,
of the good women,

des vreude müeze belîben
his joy must remain

mit jâmẹr unz an sîn ende,
with grief until to his end,

wan si sint âne wende
for they are without turning

der werlte ein vil süezez spil.
to-the world a very sweet play.

got gebe in sælde und vreuden vil!
God give them blessedness and joys much!

des ich in immer wünschen wil.
that I to-them ever wish will.

Als ich iu ê hân geseit,
As I to-you before have told,

mit grôzer klage diu maget reit
with great lament the maiden rode

über die strâze al eine;
over the road all alone;

ir vreude diu was kleine.
her joy it was small.

si reit ein pfärit wol getân,
she rode a palfrey well made,

unz ûf sîn knie reicht im diu man,
until to its knee reached to-it the mane,

daz was rôt alsam ein bluot.
which was red as a blood.

ir gereite daz was harte guot
her harness it was very good

von golde und von gesteine.
of gold and of gems.

ouch vuorte diu maget reine
also wore the maiden pure

einen roc von plîâte.
a coat of pliat.

von rôtem siglâte
of red ciclatoun

vuorte sị eine kappen an;
wore she a cape on;

ein veder, wîz alsam ein swan,
a fur, white as a swan,

daz niht edlers mohte sîn,
than-which nothing nobler might be,

diu was guot härmîn,
it was good ermine,

drin gefurrieret,
there-in lined,

mit zobeln wol gezieret.
with sables well adorned.

ir zöpfe wârn enpflohten gar;
her braids were unbraided wholly;

ûf den satel reichte ir hâr,
upon the saddle reached her hair,

daz was goltvar unde reit;
which was gold-colored and curly;

dar ûf ein huot der was breit,
there upon a hat which was broad,

von pfânvedern gestricket wol.
of peacock-feathers knotted well.

ir herze daz was jâmers vol;
her heart it was of-grief full;

si klaget unde weinde
she lamented and wept

als siz von herzen meinde;
as-if she-it from heart meant;

man mohte vil wol an ir sehen
one might very well in her see

daz ir leide was geschehen,
that to-her sorrow was happened,

wan si vil jæmerlîche schrê
for she very wretchedly cried

‘owê mir armen wîbe, wê!
‘alas me poor woman, woe!

ditz leit daz klage ich immer mê.’
this sorrow it lament I ever more.’

Vor jâmer si daz übersach
From grief she that overlooked

daz si wider si niht sprach,
that she to them nothing spoke,

dô si die strâze vür si reit.
when she the road before them rode.

dem edeln rîter was vil leit
to-the noble knight was very sorrowful

ir kumber und ir swære.
her grief and her heaviness.

wer diu maget wære,
who the maiden were,

daz was den gesellen unbekant.
that was to-the companions unknown.

her Gwîgâlois sprach zehant
lord Gwigalois spoke at-once

‘vrouwe, ich wil daz besehen
‘lady, I will that see

waz der mägde sî geschehen
what to-the maiden be happened

od waz ir leides werre.’
or what her of-sorrow troubles.’

si sprach ‘lieber herre,
she spoke ‘dear lord,

nu tuot als ir gebietet,
now do as you command,

wan swaz ir mir gerietet,
for whatever you me counseled,

sô tæte ich doch nâch mîner kür;
so would-do I yet after my choice;

welt ir dar, sô rîtet vür
will you thither, so ride before

und ervart dâ swaz ir welt.’
and find-out there whatever you will.’

‘ich tuon vil gerne’ sprach der helt.
‘I do very gladly’ spoke the hero.

sîn manheit dûhte ṣi dannoch kranc;
his manhood seemed to-her still weak;

dâ von er allez übẹr ir danc
there from he all against her will

nâch der âventiure reit.
after the adventure rode.

mit bet er si des überstreit
with request he her of-that outargued

daz si in mit ir rîten lie.
that she him with her ride let.

dheinen gedingen gwan si nie,
any hope won she never,

swaz manheit er begienge,
whatever manhood he should-perform,

daz in daz iht vervienge
that him that aught should-avail

ern hêt den tôt doch an der hant,
unless-he had the death yet at the hand,

wand ir was daz wol bekant
for to-her was that well known

daz diu âventiure
that the adventure

was sô ungehiure,
was so monstrous,

swer si wolde erwerben,
whoever it would win,

daz der dâ müese ersterben
that he there must die

ezn wolde got dan understên;
unless-it would God then prevent;

ân den mohtez niht ergên.
without him might-it not go.

si vorhte sîner kintheit;
she feared his childhood;

dâ von was ir sîn arbeit
there from was to-her his toil

und sîn rîten mit ir leit.
and his riding with her sorrowful.

The weeping maiden tells how a palfrey sent by the king of Ireland, with a speaking parrot in a golden cage, was awarded to her as the most beautiful lady, and then seized by a red knight for his beloved. Gwigalois resolves to win it back. At the tournament field they are received by her niece, the princess of Persia, who is hearing the tale of Aeneas, and find the red knight lying in his lady's lap.

Her Gwîgâlois, der küene man,
Lord Gwigalois, the bold man,

lie sîn ros zesprunge gân
let his horse at-gallop go

engegen der mägde wol getân.
toward the maiden well made.

diu was, als ich gesaget hân,
she was, as I told have,

schœne und alsô rîche
beautiful and so rich

daz ich wæn ir gelîche
that I believe her like

in dem lande iht wære.
in the land any were.

dô si in grôzer swære
when she in great heaviness

was sô rehte sûberlîch,
was so right neat,

owê, wem was si gelîch
alas, to-whom was she like

ê si daz leit gewünne!
before she that sorrow won!

daz si von küniges künne
that she of king's kin

sô rehte schœniu wære geborn,
so right beautiful were born,

des möhte ein tôre hân gesworn.
of-that might a fool have sworn.

ez schein wol an ir rîchen wât
it showed well in her rich clothing

daz si deheinen unrât
that she no want

hêt von armuote.
had from poverty.

vil sêre si daz muote
very sorely her that vexed

daz der rîter zuo ir reit;
that the knight to her rode;

daz machẹt ir kumber und ir leit
that made her grief and her sorrow

diu si von gewalte leit.
which she from violence suffered.

Dô er ir sô nâhen kam
When he to-her so near came

daz er ir leides war genam
that he of-her sorrow heed took

und ir kumber rehte ersach,
and her grief rightly saw,

vil gezogenlîche er sprach
very courteously he spoke

'got minne iuch, liebiu vrouwe mîn!
'God love you, dear lady mine!

mac daz in iuwern hulden sîn
(if)-may that in your favor be

daz ir mirz geruochet sagen,
that you me-it deign to-tell,

sô wil ich mit iu gerne tragen
so will I with you gladly bear

iuwern kumber und iuwer nôt,
your grief and your distress,

od ich lig ûf der verte tôt.
or I lie on the journey dead.

ich hân daz wol an iu ersehen
I have that well in you seen

daz iu schade ist geschehen;
that to-you harm is happened;

ouch wolde ichz gerne wizzen baz.'
also would I-it gladly know better.'

'waz möhte mich gehelfen daz?'
'what might me help that?'

sprach diu maget wol getân
spoke the maiden well made

'irn möht ez doch niht understân;
'you might it yet not prevent;

wan mir daz selbe leit geschach
for to-me the same sorrow happened

daz ez vil manic rîter sach
that it very many-a knight saw

den ez an ir herze gie;
to-whom it to their heart went;

diene mohten ez erwenden nie.
they might it avert never.

ich sage iuz doch — waz wirret daz?—:
I tell you-it yet what harms that?—:

über drî mîle ode baz
over three miles or more

dâ lît rîter harte vil,
there lies of-knights very many,

als ich iu nu sagen wil.
as I to-you now tell will.

ichn weiz ob irz ê habt vernomen
I-not know whether you-it before have heard

war umbe sị alle dar sint komen,
for what they all thither are come,

iegelîcher mit sîner vriundin:
each with his beloved:

dâ was ein rîterlîch gewin;
there was a knightly prize;

den verlôs ich; des ich trûric bin.
it lost I; of-that I sad am.

Ez hêt der künic von Îrlant
It had the king of Ireland

durch âventiure dar gesant
for adventure thither sent

daz schœnest pfärt deich ie gesach
the most-beautiful palfrey that-I ever saw

und einen sitich, der wol sprach
and a parrot, which well spoke

swaz er sprechen wolde.
whatever he speak would.

in einem hûse von golde
in a house of gold

was er beworht; daz ist mir kunt:
was he enclosed; that is to-me known:

daz koste mê dan tûsent pfunt
that cost more than thousand pounds

von golde und von gesteine.
of gold and of gems.

daz werc daz was kleine,
the work it was fine,

geworht vil meisterlîche
wrought very masterfully

und was gevuoclîche
and was fittingly

gesetzet zwischen die satelbogen.
set between the saddle-bows.

ir wænt des lîhte ich habe gelogen;
you believe of-that perhaps I have lied;

daz ich iu sage daz ist wâr.
what I to-you say that is true.

ez wârn die satelbogen gar
it were the saddle-bows wholly

von wîzem helfenbeine,
of white ivory,

mit golde und mit gesteine
with gold and with gems

wol gefüllet über al.
well filled over all.

ein pfelle der was hin zetal
a brocade it was thither down

drin gefurrieret.
there-in lined.

daz pfärit was gezieret
the palfrey was adorned

mit einem zoume, des nam ich war,
with a bridle, of-it took I heed,

der was von rôtem golde gar.
which was of red gold wholly.

daz der zügel solde sîn,
what the reins should be,

daz wâren borten guldîn,
those were braids golden,

geworht mit grôzem vlîze;
wrought with great diligence;

von berlen vil wîze
of pearls very white

knöpfe wârn geworht daran.
buttons were wrought there-on.

daz pfärt was blanc als ein swan,
the palfrey was white as a swan,

wol geschicket, und wol getân.
well formed, and well made.

daz winster ôre und sîn man
the left ear and its mane

diu wâren rôt zinobervar;
they were red cinnabar-colored;

daz zeswe ôre was im gar
the right ear was to-it wholly

swarz alsam ein kol.
black as a coal.

ein swarziu strieme teilte ez wol
a black stripe divided it well

nâch dem rücke hin zetal
along the back thither down

unz ûf den zagel, der was [im] val,
until to the tail, which was [to-it] fallow,

beidiu lanc unde breit.
both long and broad.

als ich iu ê han geseit,
as I to-you before have told,

daz pfärit wart gezogen dar
the palfrey became led thither

niwan under der vrouwen schar;
only among the ladies' troop;

die muosen zeinem ringe stên.
they must as-a ring stand.

man hiez die rîter dar gên
one bade the knights thither go

daz si die vrouwen sæhen.
that they the ladies should-see.

swelher si des jæhen
to-whichever they of-that should-grant

daz si diu schœnest wære dâ,
that she the most-beautiful were there,

der gæbe ouch man daz pfärit sâ,
to-her should-give also one the palfrey at-once,

wand ez der künic von Îrlant
for it the king of Ireland

ûf die rede ḥêt dar gesant.
upon the speech had thither sent.

sus kômens zuo der vrouwen schar
thus came-they to the ladies' troop

und nâmen der [aller] schœnsten war
and took of-the [of-all] most-beautiful heed

diu under in was komen dar.
who among them was come thither.

Dô si si gar besâhen,
When they them wholly looked-over,

die rîter mir des jâhen
the knights to-me of-that granted

ich wær diu schœnest under in,
I were the most-beautiful among them,

ich solde ouch haben den gewin.
I should also have the prize.

der rede wart ich harte vrô;
of-the speech became I very glad;

daz pfärt antwurte man mir dô,
the palfrey delivered one to-me then,

den sitich und swaz drûffe lac
the parrot and whatever there-on lay

und ein getwerc daz sîn pflac;
and a dwarf which of-it took-care;

daz hêt gelebet mangen tac.
it had lived many-a day.

Als ich mich sîn underwant,
When I myself of-it took-charge,

dô kom ein rîter sâ zehant,
then came a knight straightway at-once,

der was michel unde rôt.
who was big and red.

daz schœne pfärt er mir verbôt;
the beautiful palfrey he me forbade;

er zôch ez mit gewalte hin
he drew it with force away

und gap ez sîner vriundin.
and gave it to-his beloved.

daz was den rîtern allen leit;
that was to-the knights all sorrowful;

nu pflac er solher manheit
now practiced he such manhood

daz in dâ niemen torste bestân
that him there no-one dared withstand

ezn müese im an den lîp gân.
unless-it must to-him on the body go.

des zôch erz hin ungestriten;
for-that drew he-it thither unfought;

alsô bin ich dan geriten.
so am I thence ridden.

daz ist mîn klage und tuot mir wê!
that is my lament and does me woe!

der sitich jæmerlîche schrê
the parrot wretchedly cried

bescheidenlîche als ein man
distinctly as a man

zehant als er sichs versan
at-once when he himself-of-it understood

daz in der rôte rîter nam.
that him the red knight took.

den schalt er unde was im gram;
him scolded he and was to-him hostile;

er klaget mich, daz hôrte ich wol.
he lamented me, that heard I well.

daz gevilde ist rîter vol
the field is of-knights full

und sîgent ouch iemitten zuo.
and sink also continually to.

si ligent dâ unz morgen vruo;
they lie there until morning early;

sô scheidet sich diu rîterschaft.
so parts itself the knighthood.

herre got, durch dîne kraft
lord God, through thy strength

nu rihte mir!' sprach diu maget;
now judge for-me!' spoke the maiden;

'mîn leit daz sî dir gesaget,
'my sorrow it be to-thee told,

wan dir diu werlt älliu klaget.'
for to-thee the world all laments.'

'Vrouwe', sprach der rîter dô,
'Lady,' spoke the knight then,

'sît der rede ist alsô,
'since of-the speech is so,

sô sulen wir mit minnen
so shall we with love

daz pfärt wider gewinnen
the palfrey back win

und swaz er iu genomen hât.'
and whatever he from-you taken has.'

diu vrouwe sprach 'die rede lât,
the lady spoke 'the speech leave,

irn wæret dan sô manhaft
unless-you were then so manly

daz ir im mit rîterschaft
that you from-him with knighthood

den sic möht behaben an;
the victory might hold on;

des hân ich abe deheinen wân,
of-that have I but no hope,

wan niemen lebt bî dirre zît
for no-one lives by this time

der wider in deheinen strît
who against him any strife

gehaben müge ân den tôt.'
have may without the death.'

der rîter sprach 'daz wære ein nôt
the knight spoke 'that were a distress

sold er uns allen an gesigen;
(if)-should he us all on overcome;

ich wil dâ tôt von im geligen,
I will there dead from him lie,

ode er tuot iu, vrouwe, reht.
or he does to-you, lady, right.

ist er ein sô guot kneht
(if)-is he a so good knight

als man iu gesaget hât,
as one to-you told has,

ich weiz wol daz er mich bestât.
I know well that he me withstands.

nu rîtet vür und wîsẹt mich dar!'
now ride before and direct me thither!'

diu vrouwe sprach 'nu sagt mir: war?'
the lady spoke 'now tell me: whither?'

'hin, dâ die rîter sint.'
'thither, where the knights are.'

'deiswâr, sô dûht ir mich ein kint,
'truly, so seemed you to-me a child,

unde wolt ir den bestân
and would you him withstand

dem sô manic biderbę man
to-whom so many-a worthy man

an rîterschaft des prîses jach
in knighthood the prize granted

und als ich selbe an im wol sach.
and as I self in him well saw.

iu ist sîn manheit unkunt.'
to-you is his manhood unknown.'

die maget bat ęr unz an die stunt,
the maiden begged he until to the hour,

swie ez ir doch wære leit,
however it to-her yet were sorrowful,

daz ers mit guotę des überstreit
that he-her with good of-that outargued

daz si mit im wider reit.
that she with him back rode.

Sus ritens mit einander dan,
Thus rode-they with one-another away,

daz getwerc, die mägde und der man.
the dwarf, the maidens and the man.

mit mangem guoten mære
with many-a good tale

vertreip er in ir swære
drove-away he for-them their heaviness

und kurzet in die stunde,
and shortened for-them the hours,

als er vil wol kunde,
as he very well could,

unz si sô nâhen kâmen
until they so near came

daz si den schal vernâmen
that they the clamor heard

von den rîtern über al.
of the knights over all.

daz gevilde was ûf und zetal
the field was up and down

vollez pavelûne geslagen.
full of-pavilions pitched.

si sâhens schœniu wâfen tragen;
they saw-them beautiful arms bear;

dise turnierten dâ,
these tourneyed there,

sô schirmten die anderswâ;
so fenced those elsewhere;

si sâhen buhurdieren,
they saw jousting,

die knappen justieren,
the squires tilting,

tanzen unde singen,
dancing and singing,

schiezen unde springen;
shooting and leaping;

als ich iu nu sagen wil,
as I to-you now tell will,

aller hande rîterspil
of-all kinds knightly-sport

was dâ âne mâzen vil.
was there without measure much.

Dô daz her Gwîgâlois ersach,
When that lord Gwigalois saw,

ze sîner juncvrouwen er [dô] sprach
to his young-lady he [then] spoke

diu in dar gewîset hêt
who him thither directed had

‘ichn kan niht wizzen wiez hie stêt
‘I can not know how-it here stands

und erkenne ouch ir deheinen;
and know also of-them none;

zeiget mir doch den einen
show me yet the one

der iu daz pfärt genomen hât;
who from-you the palfrey taken has;

des ist deheiner slahte rât
of-that is of-no kind remedy

iune müeze reht von im geschehen,
unless-to-you must right from him happen,

od er mich dâ tôten vor im sehen
or he me there dead before him see

ern welle mịr rîterschaft versagen.’
unless-he will me knighthood refuse.’

vil ungelîch tet er eiṇem zagen.
very unlike did he a coward.

des wart diu maget harte vrô;
of-that became the maiden very glad;

mit willen zeiget si im dô
with will showed she him then

dâ der rôte rîter lac,
where the red knight lay,

der grôzer hôchverte pflac,
who great arrogance practiced,

diu dem manne ist gar ein slac.
which to-the man is wholly a blow.

Si sprach ‘nu seht hin ûf daz velt!
She spoke ‘now look thither onto the field!

dâ stêt ein harte schœne gezelt
there stands a very beautiful tent

von samît rôt unde blâ;
of samite red and blue;

mit golde ist ez eteswâ
with gold is it somewhere

gevüllet meisterlîche.
filled masterfully.

der rîter der ist rîche;
the knight he is rich;

daz schînet an sîn̤em geverte wol.
that shows in his bearing well.

swaz ich leides von im dol,
whatever I of-sorrow from him suffer,

daz rihte, herre got, enzît!
that judge, lord God, in-time!

mîn niftel im dâ nâhen lît,
my niece to-him there near lies,

des küni̤ges tohter von Persîâ;
the king’s daughter of Persia;

in der gezelte was ich dâ;
in the tent was I there;

mit der suln wir belîben:
with her shall we remain:

diu kan uns wol vertrîben
she can for-us well pass

die zît mit vreuden, deist ir sit;
the time with joys, that-is her custom;

dâ liebet si̤ sich den liuten mit.
there endears she herself to-the people with.

si siht uns gerne, daz weiz ich wol,
she sees us gladly, that know I well,

wand ir herze ist tugent vol;
for her heart is of-virtue full;

des willen si geniezen sol.'
of-the will she enjoy shall.'

Mit vreuden ritens über daz velt
With joys rode-they over the field

vür vil manic schœne gezelt.
before very many-a beautiful tent.

dô si die maget sâhen
when they the maiden saw

mit vreuden wider gâhen
with joys back hasten

der daz pfärit was genomen,
from-whom the palfrey was taken,

und den rîter mit ir komen
and the knight with her come

mit sîner juncvrouwen,
with his young-lady,

dô wart dâ michel schouwen
then became there great gazing

von den liuten über al
from the people over all

zehant als daz mære erschal
at-once when the tidings resounded

war umb der rîter dar was komen.
for what the knight thither was come.

als irz dâ vor habt vernomen,
as you-it there before have heard,

er wolde verliesen dâ sîn leben,
he would lose there his life,

ode man muose wider geben
or one must back give

der mägde ir pfärit und ir guot.
to-the maiden her palfrey and her goods.

er tet als der biderbe tuot,
he did as the worthy-one does,

dem ie zem besten stêt sîn muot.
to-whom ever to-the best stands his mind.

Des küniges tohter von Persîâ
The king's daughter of Persia

diu saz in ir gezelte dâ
she sat in her tent there

mit vreuden, als ir sit was.
with joys, as her custom was.

ein schœniu maget vor ir las
a beautiful maiden before her read

an einem buoche ein mære
in a book a tale

wie Troje zevuort wære
how Troy destroyed were

und wie jæmerlîche
and how wretchedly

Ênêas der rîche
Eneas the rich

sich danne stal mit sînem her
himself then stole with his host

vor den Kriechen ûf daz mer,
from the Greeks onto the sea,

wie in vrouwe Dîdô enpfie
how him lady Dido received

und wiez im dar nâch ergie,
and how-it to-him there after went,

als ez iu ofte ist geseit.
as it to-you often is told.

innen des ir niftel reit
inside of-that her niece rode

mit ir gesellescheften dar;
with her company thither;

des nam diu küniginne war.
of-that took the queen heed.

daz mærẹ man dô belîben lie.
the tale one then remain let.

diu vrouwẹ mit ir gesinde gie
the lady with her household went

und enpfie vil minniclîche
and received very lovingly

die geselln̩ alle gelîche.
the companions all alike.

ir nifteln nam si bî der hant;
her niece took she by the hand;

diu tet ir schiere daz erkant
she made to-her quickly that known

wie sị der rîter hêt wider brâht,
how her the knight had back brought,

als ichs dâ vor hân gedâht.
as I-it there before have mentioned.

des nam si michel wunder
of-that took her great wonder

und gedâhte iedoch darunder
and thought yet there-under

‘wære er niht sô manhaft,
‘were he not so manly,

ern hêt sich dirre rîterschaft
he had himself this knighthood

nimmer underwunden.’
never undertaken.’

die vrouwen im enbunden
the ladies for-him unbound

die riemen alle sâ zehant.
the straps all straightway at-once.

dô schutèr sîn îsengwant
then poured-he his iron-clothing

in sînen schilt ûf daz gras.
into his shield onto the grass.

vil snelle im bereitet was
very swiftly for-him readied was

nach sînem willẹn ein reinez bat,
after his will a clean bath,

als es diu küniginne bat,
as it the queen bade,

und harte guotiu kleider;
and very good garments;

diu wâren der beider
they were of-the both

von pfelle und von rôsâte:
of brocade and of rosat:

diu vrouwe was mit râte
the lady was with provision

gevaren von ir lande;
fared from her land;

dẹheinen mangel si erkande;
no lack she knew;

ir miltẹ was âne schande.
her generosity was without disgrace.

Als der rîter wart gekleit,
When the knight became clothed,

dô saz er ûf unde reit
then sat he up and rode

dâ er den rôten rîter vant.
where he the red knight found.

die maget nam er bî der hant
the maiden took he by the hand

der er gewalt hêt getân.
to-whom he violence had done.

si giengen beidiu vür in stân
they went both before him to-stand

in sîn gezelt dâ er lac.
into his tent where he lay.

vil grôzer hôchverte er pflac; 2760
very great arrogance he practiced;

er hêt sich hövischlîche
he had himself courteously

ûf einen kulter rîche
upon a quilt rich

in sînẹr Âmîen schôz geleit.
into his Amie's lap laid.

waz touc nu mêr dâ von geseit?
what avails now more there of told?

diu was ze wunsche wol gekleit. 2765
she was to ideal well clad.

X · COUNT HOJIR

The parrot greets its rightful lady, and Gwigalois asks the red knight to return the palfrey; he refuses with scorn, and they agree to fight next morning. The red knight is Count Hojir of Mannesvelt, a Saxon famed in Spain. Before the assembled knights and ladies, Gwigalois unhorses him and then wins on foot, and Hojir surrenders the palfrey and the parrot.

Der sitich stuont vor in und sprach
The parrot stood before them and spoke

als er die juncvrouwen sach
when he the young-lady saw

'willekomen, liebiu vrouwe mîn!
'welcome, dear lady mine!

ich sold et iuwèr zerehte sîn;
I should just yours by-right be;

mit gewalte bin ich iu benomen.
with force am I from-you taken.

von swelhem dinge daz sî komen,
from whatever thing that be come,

daz nider got und rihtez hie,
that let-down God and judge-it here,

wand er gestuont dem rehten ie.'
for he stood-by the right ever.'

daz gap dem rîter guoten muot.
that gave to-the knight good spirit.

guot trôst was ie zer nœte guot:
good comfort was ever in-the need good:

swie manhaft ein herze sî,
however manly a heart be,

ist dâ niht guotes trôstes bî,
(if)-is there not of-good comfort by,

ez kumt vil lîhte daz ẹz verzaget.
it comes very easily that it despairs.

swer ouch dem sînen kumber klaget
whoever also to-him his grief laments

der im deheines guotes gan
who to-him of-no good grants

und in ouch niht getrœsten kan,
and him also not comfort can,

der dunkẹt mich niht ein wîser man.
he seems to-me not a wise man.

Als ir der herre wart gewar,
When of-her the lord became aware,

mit hôhem muote sprach er dar
with high spirit spoke he thither

'wen suochẹt ir, junger rîter, hie
'whom seek you, young knight, here

mit iuwer âmîen, die
with your beloved, whom

ir dâ leitet bî der hant?'
you there lead by the hand?'

der rîter sprach 'wær iu bekant
the knight spoke 'were to-you known

ir geburt und ir leben,
her birth and her life,

sô solt ir ir wider geben
so should you to-her back give

daz pfärt daz ir erteilet wart.
the palfrey which to-her adjudged became.

mit ir bin ich hie ûf der vart
with her am I here on the journey

als ich iuch des biten wil.
as I you for-that beg will.

swie mir der bet doch sî ze vil
however to-me of-the request yet be too much

— wand ich iu niht gedienet hân—,
—for I to-you not served have—,

iedoch sô tuon ichz ûf den wân,
yet so do I-it upon the hope,

gewert ir mich der selben gebe,
(if)-grant you me the same gift,

daz ichz diene die wîle ich lebe.
that I-it serve the while I live.

ouch sult ir bedenken daz
also shall you consider that

ir habt darumbe grôzen haz
you have there-for great hatred

von den liuten über al.
from the people over all.

sô ist iu daz der meiste val
so is to-you that the greatest fall

daz ir gewalt an ir begêt,
that you violence on her commit,

daz iu doch niht ze tuone stêt,
which to-you yet not to do stands,
wan si daz pfärt mit rehte hêt.
for she the palfrey with right had.
Durch got, erkennet ir ir reht!'
For God, acknowledge you her right!'
der rîter sprach 'herre guot kneht,
the knight spoke 'lord good knight,
ich wil iu râten waz ir tuot:
I will to-you counsel what you do:
nu lêrt iuch selben, daz ist iu guot.
now teach you self, that is to-you good.
ir mugt mich niht gelêren,
you may me not teach,
wand ich wil mîner êren
for I will of-my honors
an iuch lâzen sô ich minnest mac;
to you leave as I least may;
daz was ie der tumben slac
that was ever the fools' blow
daz si sich durch ir tumpheit
that they themselves through their foolishness
ofte grôzer arbeit
often great toil
underwindent; waz hilft si daz?'
undertake; what helps them that?'
der rîter sprach 'nu tuot ir baz,
the knight spoke 'now do you better,
sît ir sô rehte wîse sît!
since you so right wise are!
deiswâr, daz lâze ich âne nît.
truly, that leave I without hatred.

welt ir der juncvrouwen mîn
will you to-the young-lady mine

gnâden und rehtes wider sîn
of-grace and of-right against be

mit iuwerm gwalte den ir traget,
with your power which you bear,

sô sî iu von mir widersaget;
so be to-you from me defied;

ich wil iuch mit der gotes kraft
I will you with the God's strength

und mit rehter rîterschaft
and with right knighthood

morgen bestên ûf der plân;
tomorrow withstand upon the plain;

als ich mich vermezzen hân.
as I myself vowed have.

vür wâr wil ich iu daz sagen:
for true will I to-you that tell:

mac ich den sic dâ bejagen,
(if)-may I the victory there win,

sô volget uns daz pfärit hin;
so follows us the palfrey thither;

gevalle ab mir der ungewin,
(if)-falls but to-me the loss,

sô tuot ir dar nâch als ir welt.'
so do you there after as you will.'

des lachet dô der helt
of-that laughed then the hero

und wart der rede harte vrô,
and became of-the speech very glad,

wan sîn muot der stuont alsô
for his mind it stood so

er vuor niwan nâch manheit;
he fared nothing-but after manhood;

swaz er dâ vor ie gestreit
whatever he there before ever fought

des hêt ẹr ie doch den sic genomen;
of-that had he ever yet the victory taken;

daz was von sîner sterke komen.
that was from his strength come.

als hêten siz von im vernomen.
so had they-it from him heard.

Im was der bart und daz hâr
To-him was the beard and the hair

beidiu rôt, viurvar.
both red, fire-colored.

von den selben hœre ich sagen
of the same hear I say

daz si valschiu herze tragen;
that they false hearts bear;

des gelouben hân ich niht:
of-that belief have I not:

swie man den getriuwen siht,
however one the faithful sees,

in swelher varwe er schînet,
in whatever color he appears,

sîn herze sich doch pînet
his heart itself yet strives

ûf triuwe und ûf güete.
upon faith and upon goodness.

ob ein valscher blüete
if a false-one bloomed

als ein rôse diu dâ stêt,
as a rose which there stands,

ûz im doch niwan valschez gêt.
out-of him yet only false goes.

swie sîn hâr ist getân,
however his hair is made,

ist et er ein getriuwer man,
(if)-is just he a faithful man,

diu varwe im niht geschaden kan.
the color him not harm can.

Der herre der was rîche;
The lord he was rich;

an manheit sîn gelîche
in manhood his like

der was ninder in der schar.
it was nowhere in the troop.

ez hêt von im, daz ist wâr,
it had from him, that is true,

vil manger sînen lîp verlorn;
very many-a-one his life lost;

er was von Mannesvelt geborn,
he was from Mannesvelt born,

der grâvẹ Hójir was er genant;
the count Hojir was he named;

durch manheit in vremdiu lant
for manhood into foreign lands

was er gevaren mangen tac;
was he fared many-a day;

rîterschaft was sîn bejac.
knighthood was his pursuit.

als ich iu nu sagen wil,
as I to-you now tell will,

êren unde guotes vil
of-honors and of-goods much

hêt er erworbẹn mit sîner hant;
had he won with his hand;

zIspanje was er wol bekant,
in-Spain was he well known,

swie er ein Sahse wære;
however he a Saxon were;

im was dâ heime unmære
to-him was there at-home unwelcome

sich ze verligen einen tac,
himself to lie-idle one day,

wan mit gemache niemen mac
for with comfort no-one may

grôze êre erwerben.
great honor win.

von rehtę sol er verderben
by right shall he perish

der dâ heime sich verlît
who there at-home himself lies-idle

und sich vlîzet zaller zît
and himself applies at-all time

daz sînem lîbe sanfte sî,
that to-his body soft be,

wan bœse gemach ist êren vrî.
for wicked comfort is of-honors free.

swer sich an êren wil erholn,
whoever himself in honors will recover,

der muoz benamen kumber doln
he must assuredly grief suffer

und underwîlen arbeit.
and at-times toil.

ez wirt vil selten hirz erjeit
it becomes very seldom hart hunted-down

mit slâfendem hunde;
with sleeping hound;

træges wolves munde
sluggish wolf's to-mouth

geschiht von spîse selten guot;
happens from food seldom good;

der dinge was er wol behuot:
of-the things was he well guarded:

ern hêt sich heime niht verlegen.
he had himself at-home not lain-idle.

mit sîner kunst wânde der degen
with his art believed the thane

den rîter überwinden;
the knight to-overcome;

ern trûwẹt an im niht vinden
he trusted in him not to-find

alsô grôze meisterschaft.
so great mastery.

dâ was kunst unde kraft,
there was art and strength,

sælde unde manheit;
blessedness and manhood;

diu hêt got an in geleit;
those had God on him laid;

dâ mit erz allez überstreit.
there with he-it all outfought.

Dô man sîn ernest rehte ersach,
When one his earnest rightly saw,

der grâve zuo dem rîter sprach
the count to the knight spoke

'herre, bereit iuch dár zuo:
'lord, ready yourself there for:

kumt her wider morgen vruo,
come hither back tomorrow early,

als ir messe habt vernomen,
when you mass have heard,

und lâze wir dar zuo komen
and let we there to come

rîter unde vrouwen,
knights and ladies,

die ez wellen schouwen.
who it will behold.

sît ir dan sô manhaft,
(if)-are you then so manly,

daz ir mir mit rîterschaft
that you from-me with knighthood

den sic muget behaben an,
the victory may hold on,

ich wirde iu gerne undertân
I become to-you gladly subject

swes ir mir gebietet.
in-whatever you me command.

ich vürhte ab ir genietet
I fear but you satisfy

iuch ê der rîterschefte.
yourself before of-the knighthood.

irn habt niht ganzer krefte;
you have not whole strength;

der sinne sît ir gar ein kint;
of-the wits are you wholly a child;

iuwer kraft diu ist ein wint
your strength it is a wind

wider einen starken man.
against a strong man.

ezn welle got dan understân,
unless-it will God then prevent,

ir müezet uns hie lâzẹn ein pfant.'
you must to-us here leave a pledge.'

her Gwîgâlois sprach sâ zehant
lord Gwigalois spoke straightway at-once

'ez müez under uns beiden
'it must between us both

got ze rehte scheiden;
God to right part;

dem wil ichz enpfelhen gar,
to-him will I-it commend wholly,

wand er nam ie des rehten war;
for he took ever of-the right heed;

ân in kan ich niht strîten.
without him can I not fight.

ich wil nu wider rîten
I will now back ride

mit urloube zer vrouwen mîn.' 2925
with leave to-the lady mine.'

'got müez iu genædic sîn!'
'God may to-you gracious be!'

sprach diu vrouwe und der man.
spoke the lady and the man.

sus reit her Gwîgâlois von dan
thus rode lord Gwigalois from thence

mit der mägde wol getân.
with the maiden well made.

Diu mære vlugen über ḍaz velt 2930
The tidings flew over the field

von der hütte in daz gezelt
from the hut into the tent

wie ein rîter wære komen,
how a knight were come,

als irz ê habt vernomen,
as you-it before have heard,

mit der mägde wol getân:
with the maiden well made:

der woldẹ den grâven bestân 2935
he would the count withstand

der der rôte rîter hiez,
who the red knight was-called,

dar umbe daz er niht enliez
there for that he not let-off

niwan durch sînen übermuot
only through his arrogance

der mägde ir pfärit und ir guot,
the maiden her palfrey and her goods,

daz ir erteilte manic man;
which to-her adjudged many-a man;

dar umbe wolde er in bestân
there for would he him withstand

eine ûf der heide
alone upon the heath

ir einem ze leide,
of-them to-one to sorrow,

wand erz mit dẹheinen minnen
for he-it with no love

mohte wider gwinnen.
might back win.

dô bat dâ man unde wîp
then begged there man and woman

daz got sînen jungen lîp
that God his young body

vristẹ unde behuote.
preserve and guard.

si gunden in ir muote
they granted in their mind

dem jungen rîter glückes wol;
to-the young knight luck well;

daz doch dem manne helfen sol
which yet the man help shall

ob im diu werlt guotes gan,
if to-him the world good grants,

wan swer daz verdienen kan
for whoever that earn can

daz im diu werlt sprichet guot,
that to-him the world speaks good,

der sol vor leide sîn behuot,
he shall from sorrow be guarded,

wand ir ist leider nû niht vil
for of-them is alas now not many

die diu sælde ûf ir zil
whom the blessedness upon their goal

sô gärlîche lâze
so wholly lets

daz si mit der mâze
that they with the measure

älliu dinc verenden.
all things end.

got müeze im helfe senden
God may to-him help send

der ir lop erwerben sol,
who its praise win shall,

wan si ist leider valsches vol.
for it is alas of-falseness full.

dâ von muoz er sîn erwelt
there from must he be chosen

der zem besten wirt gezelt;
who to-the best becomes counted;

daz bejagt her Gwîgâlois der helt.
that wins lord Gwigalois the hero.

Mit vreuden gie diu naht hin.
With joys went the night away.

des andern morgens wâfent in
of-the other morning armed him

diu künigîn von Persîâ
the queen of Persia

und vil manic vrouwe dâ
and very many-a lady there

mit vlîze in sîn îsengwant
with diligence into his iron-clothing

unde vuorten in zehant
and led him at-once

dâ ẹr messè vernam,
where he mass heard,

als ez dem helde wol gezam,
as it to-the hero well befitted,

von den drin genenden.
of the three persons.

dô si ir bet verenden
when they their prayer ended

und messe wart gesungen,
and mass became sung,

die rîter zuo im drungen
the knights to him pressed

und trôsten in als einen man
and comforted him as a man

dem diu werlt guotes gan.
to-whom the world good grants.

sîn ors wart im gezogen dar;
his steed became to-him led there;

daz was wol bedecket gar
it was well covered wholly

mit einer kovertiure.
with a caparison.

im wart dâ ze stiure
to-him became there as help

gegeben manic reiner segen.
given many-a pure blessing.

si bâten sîn got alle pflegen
they begged of-him God all take-care

beidiu arme und rîche.
both poor and rich.

vil vermezzenlîche
very boldly

spranc er ûf daz ors sîn.
sprang he upon the steed his.

den schilt reicht im diu künigîn,
the shield reached to-him the queen,

daz sper diu maget wol getân
the spear the maiden well made

der ér gewalt hêt getân
to-whom he violence had done

mit dem er solde strîten.
with which he should fight.

nu sach er gegęn im rîten
now saw he toward him ride

den selben rîter sâ zehant.
the same knight straightway at-once.

der was dâ bî wol bekant:
he was there by well known:

sîn wâfen daz was allez rôt;
his arms they were all red;

an sînem schilte was der Tôt
on his shield was the Death

gemâlet vil griulîche.
painted very horribly.

'wîchâ, herre, wîche!'
'make-way, lord, make-way!'

die garzûn alle riefen
the pages all called

die dâ vor im liefen.
who there before him ran.

si wârn siges an im gewon.
they were of-victory in him accustomed.

dô schiet ab in dâ von
then parted but him there from

sîn unreht und sîn hôchvart.
his wrong and his arrogance.

ein rinc in gemachet wart
a ring for-them made became

daz si zesamne mohten komen.
that they together might come.

mit nîde wurden dô genomen
with hatred became then taken

diu ors beidiu mit den sporn.
the steeds both with the spurs.

dâ wart manic sper verlorn
there became many-a spear lost

in vil kurzen stunden.
in very short hours.

der rôte hêt dâ vunden
the red-one had there found

alrêrst sînen gestrîten.
first-of-all his match.

si begunden vaste rîten
they began fast to-ride

beide einander ûf daz leben.
both one-another upon the life.

dem jungen rîter wart gegeben
to-the young knight became given

ein starkez sper in sîne hant.
a strong spear into his hand.

dô kêrte er an den wîgant
then turned he at the fighter

nâch sînes vater lêre.
after his father's teaching.

dône mohtèr niht mêre
then might-he not more

gewern vor dem kinde:
hold-out before the child:

er stach in alsô swinde
he stabbed him so swiftly

von dem orse ûf daz gras
from the steed onto the grass

dạz im der sprâchè zerunnen was.
that to-him the speech run-out was.

daz was im dâ vor nie geschehen.
that was to-him there before never happened.

zesamne begundens alle sehen,
together began-they all to-look,

mit worten im des prîses jehen.
with words to-him the prize grant.

Von dem orse erbeizter nider.
From the steed dismounted-he down.

der grâve kom ze sinnen wider;
the count came to senses back;

er spranc ûf und lief in an.
he sprang up and ran him at.

wolde er daz erwendet hân,
(if)-would he that averted have,

daz hêt er ê vil wol getân
that had he before very well done

dô er sich ligendẹ niht versan.
when he himself lying not knew.

daz liez er durch sîn êre.
that let he for his honor.

des leit er deste mêre
of-that suffered he the more

von im slege âne nôt.
from him blows without need.

er hêt in nâch ûf sînen tôt
he had him near up-to his death

gespart, als vil manger tuot
spared, as very many-a-one does

der durch sînen hôhen muot
who through his high spirit

sînes vîndes schônet,
his foe spares,

wand er im des lônet
for he to-him for-that rewards

mit dem tôde, swenne er mac.
with the death, whenever he may.

dâ gie slac wider slac;
there went blow against blow;

ir deweder ḍḛm andern niht vertruoc.
of-them neither to-the other nothing bore.

der grâve doch den rîter sluoc
the count yet the knight struck

unz an des kreizes ende.
until to the circle's end.

dô zarten ir gebende
then tore their headdresses

die vrouwen vor leide;
the ladies from sorrow;

sich huop ûf der heide
itself raised upon the heath

von den vrouwen an dem tage
from the ladies on the day

vil grôzer jâmer unde klage.
very great grief and lament.

ez rief diu maget wol getân
it called the maiden well made

mit jâmer unsern herren an
with grief our lord on

durch die er die nôt bestuont,
for whom he the distress withstood,

als die getriuwen tuont.
as the faithful do.

si sprach ‘herre, reiner got,
she spoke ‘lord, pure God,

nu ist ez allèz in dîm gebot:
now is it all in thy command:

der werlte tôt und ir leben;
the world's death and its life;

geruoche mînem kempfen geben
deign to-my champion to-give

mit dîner helfe ganze kraft
with thy help whole strength

an dirre herten rîterschaft,
in this hard knighthood,

wan du, keiser, vil wol weist,
for thou, emperor, very well knowest,

vater, sun, hêrre geist,
father, son, holy spirit,

daz er gewalt an mir begêt.’
that he violence on me commits.’

dô die klage dęr rîter hêt
when the lament the knight had

vernomen von den vrouwen,
heard from the ladies,

dô begunder vaste houwen;
then began-he fast to-hew;

beidiu schilt und îsengwant
both shield and iron-clothing

sluoc er im allez von der hant
struck he from-him all from the hand

3070 und treip in durch den kreiz wider.
and drove him through the circle back.

man sach daz bluot vallen nider
one saw the blood fall down

von den starken wunden.
from the strong wounds.

sus wart er überwunden
thus became he overcome

von dem jungen rîter dâ.
by the young knight there.

3075 dô muos er im sichern sâ
then must he to-him pledge at-once

swaz er in tuon hieze,
whatever he him do should-bid,

daz er des niht enlieze;
that he of-that nothing should-omit;

dar umbe liez er im sîn leben.
there for let he to-him his life.

daz pfärit muose er wider geben
the palfrey must he back give

3080 und den sitech âne danc.
and the parrot without will.

daz im dâ sô wol gelanc,
that to-him there so well succeeded,

des wart daz liut allez vrô.
of-that became the people all glad.

mit grôzem schalle vuorte in dô
with great clamor led him then

diu künigîn von Persîâ
the queen of Persia

durch ruowe in ir gezelt sâ. 3085
for rest into her tent at-once.

ouch volget im dar in
also followed him there in

sîn vil rîterlîch gewin
his very knightly gain

und die rîter âne zal.
and the knights without number.

sich huop dâ vil grôzer schal.
itself raised there very great clamor.

ir vreude was des rôten val. 3090
their joy was the red-one's fall.

XI · HOJIR SENT TO ARTHUR

Hojir must go to Arthur's court and learns his conqueror's name. The maiden begs Gwigalois to come home with her, but he must ride to Korntin; she then refuses the palfrey, leaves it to him for his companion, and rides home, and he gives it to the maiden who guides him. They come to a rich tent ringed with fifty spears, whose lord receives them and asks their errand, and Gwigalois tells him of the adventure at Korntin.

Dô er den prîs dâ hêt bejaget,
When he the prize there had won,

als ich iu nu hân gesaget,
as I to-you now have told,

den grâven hiez er sichern des: —
the count bade he pledge of-that:—

welt irz vernemẹn, ich sagiu wes —
will you-it hear, I tell-you what—

daz er und sîn vriundin
that he and his beloved

vüeren gegẹn Britanje hin
should-fare toward Britain thither

zem milten künịge Artûs
to-the generous king Arthur

und dâ wæren in sînẹm hûs
and there were in his house

unz er dar nâch im kæme;
until he there after him should-come;

swer daz gerne vernæme
whoever that gladly should-hear

wer in dar hêt gesant,
who them thither had sent,

daz erz im alsô tæte erkant:
that he-it to-him so should-make known:

'daz hât der rîter mit dem rade.'
'that has the knight with the wheel.'

der grâve sprach 'daz wær mir schade
the count spoke 'that were to-me harm

soldich iuch niht erkennen baz.'
(if)-should-I you not know better.'

der rîter sprach 'wie kæme daz?'
the knight spoke 'how would-come that?'

'dâ vüert vil manic man daz rat
'there carries very many-a man the wheel

der nimmer kumt an iuwer stat
who never comes to your place

an geburt und an manheit.
in birth and in manhood.

dár umb wære ez mir leit
there for were it to-me sorrowful

und wesse gerne iuwern namen.
and would-know gladly your name.

irn durft iuch nimmer des geschamen
you need yourself never of-that be-ashamed

daz iu an mir gelungen ist,
that to-you over me succeeded is,

wan daz weiz unser herre Krist
for that knows our lord Christ

daz ez mir nie mê geschach.
that it to-me never more happened.

der junge rîtẹr aber dô sprach
the young knight again then spoke

'ich wil mich iu nennen
'I will myself to-you name

daz ir mich mügt erkennen,
that you me may know,

sît irs sô vlîziclîche gert,
since you-it so diligently desire,

wand ir sît aller êren wert.
for you are of-all honors worth.

ich bin Gwîgâlois genant
I am Gwigalois named

und hân gedâht mit mîner hant
and have thought with my hand

der besten lop erwerben
of-the best praise to-win

od mänlîch ersterben;
or manfully die;

alsô bin ich ûz gevarn.'
so am I out fared.'

'herre, got müez iuch bewarn.'
'lord, God may you guard.'

sprach der grâve Hojir
spoke the count Hojir

'und gevüege uns noch daz wir
'and fit us yet that we

mit vreuden müezẹn ein ander sehen;
with joys must one other see;

swaz mir von iu ist geschehen
whatever to-me from you is happened

des wil ich niht laster hân.'
of-that will I no disgrace have.'

dô nam er urloup und schiet dan
then took he leave and parted away

engegẹn Britanje, als er gebôt.
toward Britain, as he commanded.

dâ wurden liehtiu ougen rôt
there became bright eyes red

dô sich diu rîterschaft zerliez;
when itself the knighthood dissolved;

dem herren Gwîgâlois gehiez
to-the lord Gwigalois promised

geselleschaft vil manger dâ.
companionship very many-a-one there.

sus schieden sich die rîter sâ
thus parted themselves the knights at-once

beidiu mit vreuden und mit klage.
both with joys and with lament.

ez was wol nâch mittem tage
it was well after mid day

und hêten zît ze rîten
and had time to ride

die dâ niht wolden bîten
who there not would wait

unz an den andern morgen.
until to the other morning.

dâ was unverborgen
there was unbidden

triuwe unde minne;
faith and love;

mit worten und mit sinne
with words and with mind

erbuten siz ein ander wol,
offered they-it one other well,

als ein vriunt dem andern sol
as a friend to-the other shall

der im dienstes ist bereit
who to-him of-service is ready

und im ganze triuwe treit
and to-him whole faith bears

ân aller slahte bôsheit.
without of-all kind wickedness.

Sus schieden si sich alle dâ.
Thus parted they themselves all there.

diu künigîn von Persîâ
the queen of Persia

bat den rîter mit ir varn.
begged the knight with her to-fare.

er sprach ‘vrouwe, ich muoz bewarn
he spoke ‘lady, I must guard

daz ich mich iht versûme;
that I myself aught neglect;

jâ ẹrbat ich des vil kûme
indeed won-by-begging I of-that very scarcely

die lieben juncvrouwen mîn
the dear young-lady mine

diu mîn geleite dar sol sîn
who my escort thither shall be

daz si hie her mit mir reit.’
that she here hither with me rode.’

diu vrouwe sprach ‘herre, seit,
the lady spoke ‘lord, tell,

war sol si iuch leiten?’
whither shall she you lead?’

‘des wil ich iuch bereiten:
‘of-that will I you inform:

zeiner âventiure
to-an adventure

diu ist sô ungehiure
which is so monstrous

daz si niemen mac bestân
that it no-one may withstand

ezn müeze im an den lîp gân;
unless-it must to-him on the body go;

dar an ich mich niht sûmen wil.’
there in I myself not delay will.’

dô wart im genigen vil
then became to-him bowed much

von den vrouwen über al;
by the ladies over all;

diu dienest wâren âne zal
the services were without number

diu man den rîter ane bôt.
which one the knight on offered.

sus nam er urloup in den tôt
thus took he leave into the death

und gnâdèt der küniginne
and thanked the queen

triuwen unde minne
for-faith and love

die si im bescheinde.
which she to-him showed.

ir niftel sêre weinde
her niece sorely wept

und kustę die vrouwen alle.
and kissed the ladies all.

sus vuor si mit schalle
thus fared she with clamor

und mit grôzer rîcheit.
and with great richness.

ir spîsę was allen den bereit
her food was to-all those ready

die si wolden ezzen.
who it would eat.

an ir was niht vergezzen
in her was not forgotten

deheiner slahte güete,
of-any kind goodness,

wand ir reine[z] gemüete
for her pure mind

ie nâch êren blüete.
ever after honors bloomed.

Her Gwîgâlois und diu maget
Lord Gwigalois and the maiden

von der ich iu nu hân gesaget
of whom I to-you now have told

der er daz pfärt wider gewan,
for-whom he the palfrey back won,

die riten mit ein ander dan,
they rode with one other away,

diu juncvrouwe und diu zwei getwerc,
the young-lady and the two dwarfs,

über einen hôhen berc
over a high mountain

durch michel waltgevelle nider.
through great forest-falls down.

dô kômen sị ze der strâze wider
then came they to the road back

die diu maget vür si reit,
which the maiden before them rode,

dô si klagte ir herzeleit.
when she lamented her heart-sorrow.

sînen zoum vie si mit der hant;
his bridle caught she with the hand;

si sprach 'rîter, sît gemant
she spoke 'knight, be reminded

iuwer güete und iuwer êren,
of-your goodness and your honors,

daz ir geruochet kêren
that you deign to-turn

mit mir heim ze lande
with me home to land

(des sît ir âne schande —
(of-that are you without disgrace—

ich bit iuch sîn vil verre —
I beg you of-it very far—

daz ez iu unser herre
that it to-you our lord

vergelten müez durch sînen tôt!),
repay must through his death!),

dạz ich verdienè die grôzen nôt
that I earn the great distress

die ir durch mich habt erliten
which you for me have suffered

er sprach 'vrouwe, lât iuwer biten;
he spoke 'lady, leave your begging;

ir sult sîn niht ze harte gern,
you shall of-it not too hard desire,

wand ichn mac iuch [sîn] niht gewern.
for I may you [of-it] not grant.

ich muoz in kurzer zît bestân,
I must in short time withstand,

als ich mich an genomen hân,
as I myself on taken have,

die âventiure ze Korntîn;
the adventure at Korntin;

dar sol ich mit der vrouwen mîn
thither shall I with the lady mine

komen sô ich schierest mac.
come as I soonest may.

ez würde mîner êren slac
it would-become of-my honors blow

ob ich die lieze under wegen.
if I it should-leave under ways.

got müez iuwers lîbes pflegen,
God may of-your body take-care,

und gebe iu sælde und êre!
and give you blessedness and honor!

wan swaz ich mich nu mêre
for whatever I myself now more

sûmte hie, des gwünne ich schaden.'
should-delay here, of-that would-win I harm.'

si mohte in niht sô vil geladen
she might him not so much invite

sin verlür ir vlêhen und ir bet.
unless-she lost her imploring and her request.

dô er niht nâch ir willen tet,
when he not after her will did,

dô klaget si und weinde als ê.
then lamented she and wept as before.

ir jâmers wart dô michels mê
of-her grief became then much more

dan sîn dâ vor wære gewesen;
than of-it there before were been;

vor leide trûwet sị niht genesen,
for sorrow trusted she not to-survive,

und wære ir verre baz geschehen
and were to-her far better happened

hêt si den rîter nie gesehen,
(if)-had she the knight never seen,

wand ir von sîner hinvart
for to-her from his departure

ir reinez herze beswæret wart,
her pure heart burdened became,

mit jâmer êwiclîch bespart.
with grief eternally locked.

Dô si ir bet niht vervie
When she her request not availed

und ez an ein scheiden gie,
and it to a parting went,

daz si daz gänzlîche ersach,
that she that wholly saw,

zem jungen rîter si dô sprach
to-the young knight she then spoke

'sît ir mich niht mugt gewern,
'since you me not may grant,

sô wil ouch ich der gâbe enbern
so will also I the gift forgo

die ich von iu enpfangen hân.
which I from you received have.

ir wænt des lîhte ich habẹz getân
you believe of-that perhaps I have-it done

ze minnern mîne armuot?
to lessen my poverty?

ich hân lant unde guot,
I have land and goods,

liute und êren alsô vil
people and of-honors so much

daz ich der gâbe niht enwil.
that I the gift not will.

ir sult von rehtę iuwern gewin
you shall by right your prize

geben iuwer vriundin,
give to-your beloved,

wand ich sîn guoten rât hân.'
for I of-it good provision have.'

dô muosę daz pfärit dâ bestân:
then must the palfrey there stand:

si treipz von ir mit slegen dô;
she drove-it from her with blows then;

des wart der rîter vil unvrô,
of-that became the knight very unglad,

wand er sis alles widerstreit,
for he her-it all gainsaid,

ez wære im liep ode leit.
it were to-him dear or sorrowful.

sus nam si urloup unde reit.
thus took she leave and rode.

Der rîter sich dô underwant
The knight himself then took-charge

des schœnen pfärdes sâ zehant
of-the beautiful palfrey straightway at-once

und alles des dar ûffe lac
and of-all that there upon lay

und eins getwerges daz sîn pflac;
and of-a dwarf which of-it took-care;

daz gap er der juncvrouwen sîn.
that gave he to-the young-lady his.

dô hêt ouch si daz hündelîn
then had also she the little-hound

daz er dem rîter an gewan,
which he from-the knight on won,

als ich iu ê gesaget hân.
as I to-you before told have.

die zwô gâbe hêt si dô
the two gifts had she then

von im; der wart si harte vrô.
from him; of-that became she very glad.

iedoch hêt si deheinen trôst
yet had she no comfort

daz ir vrouwe würde erlôst
that her lady should-become freed

mit sîner manheit von ir nôt
with his manhood from her distress

und vorhte ouch daz im der tôt
and feared also that to-him the death

da wære beschert; daz was ir klage
there were destined; that was her lament

in ir muote alle tage,
in her mind all days,

wand er dûhte si ze kranc.
for he seemed to-her too weak.

dannoch reit er übẹr ir danc
still rode he against her will

mit ir; si liezz ab âne zorn
with her; she let-it but without anger

wan si die reisẹ niht hêt verlorn:
for she the journey not had lost:

si hêt erworben an der vart,
she had won on the journey,

als ez dô gahtet wart,
as it then valued became,

baz dannẹ ze tûsent marken;
more than at thousand marks;

des begunde ir herze starken
of-that began her heart to-strengthen

in vil hôhem muote,
in very high spirit,

wan von grôzem guote
for from great goods

stîgent diu herze hô;
rise the hearts high;

von armuot wirt niemen vrô.
from poverty becomes no-one glad.

daz hôrte ich ie die wîsen sagen
that heard I ever the wise say

daz die rîchen hôhe tragen,
that the rich high bear,

die armen trûren unde klagen.
the poor grieve and lament.

Mit vreuden riten si dô dan.
With joys rode they then away.

der getwerge einez in began
of-the dwarfs one to-them began

sagen schœniu mære,
to-tell beautiful tales,

wer sîn herre wære
who its lord were

der ez dar hêt gesant,
who it thither had sent,

und wiez stüende in Îrlant.
and how-it stood in Ireland.

hie mit kurztez in den tac,
here with shortened-it for-them the day,

wan man mit guoten mæren mac
for one with good tales may

und mit reinen wîben
and with pure women

die zît wol vertrîben;
the time well pass;

sus treip ez in die zît hin.
thus drove it for-them the time thither.

nu sâhen si wâ vor in
now saw they where before them

verre ûf einẹm gevilde
far upon a field

in einer grôzen wilde
in a great wilderness

ein schœne gezelt was ûf geslagen.
a beautiful tent was up pitched.

wie dem wære, daz wil ich iu sagen:
how of-it were, that will I to-you tell:

ez was hôch, sinwel und wît,
it was high, round and wide,

gel und rôt an einer sît,
yellow and red on one side,

diu ander wîz unde blâ;
the other white and blue;

ein hirzgehürne was dâ
a hart's-antlers was there

von golde drûf gestecket,
of gold there-on set,

die snüere wârn gestrecket
the ropes were stretched

vaste mit starken kîlen;
fast with strong pegs;

ouch wâren ze zwein zîlen
also were in two rows

drumbe gestecket vünfzic sper.
there-about set fifty spears.

nune wessen die gesellen wer
now-not knew the companions who

under dem gezelte lac.
under the tent lay.

innen des entweich der tac
inside of-that gave-way the day

der naht mit sînem glaste.
to-the night with its gleam.

dô îlten si vil vaste
then hastened they very fast

engegen dem gezelte sâ,
toward the tent at-once,

wan die geselḷen enwessen wâ
for the companions knew-not where

si die selben naht vertriben
they the same night passed

dâ si sô rîterlîche beliben.
where they so knightly remained.

ouch was dem rîter dar vil ger:
also was to-the knight thither very eager:

dô er ersach sô manic sper
when he saw so many-a spear

umḅ daz gezelt stecken,
about the tent stick,

daz begunde an im dô wecken
that began in him then to-waken

beidiu manheit unde kraft.
both manhood and strength.

er gedâhtẹ ‘ich vindẹ dâ rîterschaft:
he thought ‘I find there knighthood:

dar nâch ich ie gevaren bin;
there after I ever fared am;

ich wil bejagen dâ gewin,
I will win there gain,

od ich scheide gevangen hin.'
or I part captured thence.'

Der des gezeltes herre was,
Who of-the tent lord was,

dem was dar under ûf ein gras
for-him was there under upon a grass

gebettet hövischlîche
bedded courteously

mit einem kulter rîche
with a quilt rich

von zweier hande pfellen.
of two kinds brocades.

und als er die gesellen
and when he the companions

zuo im sach rîten,
to him saw ride,

niht lenger wolder bîten:
not longer would-he wait:

er gie ẹngegẹn ịn und enpfie si wol,
he went toward them and received them well,

als ein wirt den gast sol
as a host the guest shall

der genâden an in gert;
who grace of him desires;

sus wurden si von im gewert
thus became they from him granted

vil guoter handelunge dâ.
very good treatment there.

wider den rîter sprach er sâ
to the knight spoke he at-once

mit dem diu juncvrouwe reit
with whom the young-lady rode

'herre, enwære ez iu niht leit,
'lord, (if)-were it to-you not sorrowful,

ich vrâgẹt iuch gerne mære
I would-ask you gladly tidings

war iuwer wille wære
whither your will were

mit dirre juncvrouwen.
with this young-lady.

iu ist der schilt zehouwen
to-you is the shield hewn

iuwer wâfenroc verschrôten:
your surcoat cut-up:

ir habt gemachet tôten
you have made dead

ode vil sêre wunden;
or very sorely wounded;

des hât wol enpfunden
of-that has well felt

der liehte helm mit dem rade.
the bright helm with the wheel.

sî ez iu niht grôzer schade,
(if)-be it to-you no great harm,

sô lât mich wizzen war ir welt.'
so let me know whither you will.'

dô sprach her Gwîgâlois der helt
then spoke lord Gwigalois the hero

'sît ez mir niht verboten wart,
'since it to-me not forbidden became,

ich sagiu wol mîne vart:
I tell-you well my journey:

disiu maget wart gesant
this maiden became sent

ze Britanje in daz lant
to Britain into the land

mînem herren, dem künige Artûs,
to-my lord, the king Arthur,

ze Karidôl in sîn hûs,
to Karidol into his house,

als ir si sehet rîten hie.
as you her see ride here.

der künic sị minniclîche enpfie
the king her lovingly received

und diu mässenîe gar.
and the household wholly.

ûf der genâde kom si dar
upon the grace came she thither

ob iemen wære under in
whether anyone were among them

der einen rîterlîchen gwin
who a knightly prize

ze Kornţîn getorste holn;
at Korntin dared fetch;

er müesẹ dâ grôzen kumber doln
he must there great grief suffer

dar under den gewizzen tôt.
there under the certain death.

dô underwant ich mich der nôt,
then undertook I myself the distress,

als ich iu nu hân geseit.
as I to-you now have told.

ez was aber ir vil leit,
it was but to-her very sorrowful,

wand ich dûhte et si ze kranc.
for I seemed just to-her too weak.

sus bin ich allez übẹr ir danc
thus am I all against her will

mit ir geriten her.
with her ridden hither.

got gebe mir daz ich mîn sper
God give me that I my spear

dâ sô vertuo als ich des ger!'
there so spend as I of-that desire!'

XII · THE KNIGHT OF THE TENT

The lord of the tent, who has lost all his companions at Korntin, proposes that they fight and that the loser go home. He gives Gwigalois his best horse, six squires, and twenty-five spears, and after many lances Gwigalois kills him; his squires are sent to Arthur. Riding on, the maiden tells of Korntin: her young lady holds only a mountain castle, since the heathen Roaz of Glois, who has given his soul to the devil, befriended her lady's father with false friendship.

Dô der herre daz hêt vernomen
When the lord that had heard

warumb od wie er dar was komen
why or how he thither was come

und sîne jugent rehte ersach,
and his youth rightly saw,

des nam in wunder unde sprach
of-that took him wonder and spoke

'mich dunket des: ir sît ze kint;
'to-me seems of-that: you are too child;

iuwer kraft diu ist ein wint
your strength it is a wind

zer selben âventiure,
for-the same adventure,

wan sị ist ze holen tiure,
for it is to fetch dear,

als ich iu nu sagen wil:
as I to-you now tell will:

ich hân dâ gesellen vil
I have there companions many

verloren von der selben nôt;
lost from the same distress;

ez sint dâ gelegen tôt
there are there lain dead

die tiursten von dem lande,
the dearest of the land,

an den ich wol erkande
in whom I well knew

ganze manheit unde kraft,
whole manhood and strength,

und die ir zît mit rîterschaft
and who their time with knighthood

grôzen prîs erwurben.
great prize won.

sît die dâ verdurben,
since they there perished,

wie möht iu gelingen?
how might to-you succeed?

welt ir den prîs erringen,
will you the prize win,

sô volget mînem râte:
so follow my counsel:

ich hân vruo und spâte
I have early and late

dar nâch geriten wol zehẹn jâr,
there after ridden well ten years,

biz ich mîne gesellen gar
until I my companions wholly

hân verlorn und ouch daz guot.
have lost and also the goods.

sît wir nu beide einen muot
since we now both one mind

haben zuo der selben nôt,
have to the same distress,

sô lâze wir ez hie den tôt
so let we it here the death

alsô gerne scheiden
as gladly part

enzwischen uns beiden
between us both

und sweder unser hie gesige,
and whichever of-us here conquers,

ob der ander niht tôt gelige,
if the other not dead lie,

der danne den sic habe verlorn,
who then the victory have lost,

daz der wider âne zorn
that he back without anger

ze landę var, daz ist mîn rât;
to land fare, that is my counsel;

swer ab danne gesiget hât,
whoever but then conquered has,

der vüere dęn prîs ze Korntîn;
he should-lead the prize to Korntin;

dâ lâze er alrêrst werden schîn
there let he first become seen

ob er guot rîter künne sîn.'
whether he good knight can be.'

Her Gwîgâlois was ein man
Lord Gwigalois was a man

der nie zagheit gewan
who never cowardice won

noch nie bôsheit begie;
nor never wickedness committed;

sîn herze dâ von vreude vie
his heart there from joy caught

als im dehein manheit
when to-him any manhood

ze tuone wart vür geleit.
to do became before laid.

dô er vernam des rîters muot,
when he heard the knight's mind,

des vreute er sich und dûhte in guot,
of-that rejoiced he himself and seemed to-him good,

wand er hêt sich des bewegen
for he had himself of-that resolved

swes iemen wolde mit im pflegen
whatever anyone would with him practice

ze rîterlîcher manheit,
in knightly manhood,

dar ûf was sin lîp bereit,
there upon was his body ready,

wand er ie nâch êren ranc.
for he ever after honors strove.

der rede sagter dẹm herren danc,
for-the speech said-he to-the lord thanks,

wand er wol sach daz sîn muot
for he well saw that his mind

was ze rîterschefte guot;
was to knighthood good;

des wart her Gwîgâlois vil vrô.
of-that became lord Gwigalois very glad.

wider den rîter sprach er dô
to the knight spoke he then

'herrè, welt ir des niht enbern
'lord, will you of-that not forgo

ichn müeze iuch strîtes hie gewern,
unless-I must you of-strife here grant,

sô teilt mit mir gelîche:
so share with me alike:

der sper sît ir ze rîche
of-the spears are you too rich

und habt driu schœniu ros hie
and have three beautiful horses here

und zwelf vrume knappen, die
and twelve valiant squires, who

wartent iuwer, daz ist ir reht;
wait-on you, that is their right;

sô hân ab ich deheinen kneht,
so have but I no servant,

niwan mîn ors und min sper;
nothing-but my steed and my spear;

niht mêr gesindes brâhte ich her
not more of-household brought I hither

noch helfe zę disem strîte;
nor help for this fight;

anders ich niht rîte
otherwise I nothing ride

niwan mîn ors den langen tac;
except my steed the long day;

dâ von ez niht getûren mac
there from it not hold-out may

zer selben rîterschefte.
for-the same knighthood.

ouch hân ich lützel krefte
also have I little strength

ir seht wol selbe ich bin ein kint.'
you see well self I am a child.'

dô sprach der herre 'sît iu [nu] sint
then spoke the lord 'since to-you [now] are

diu ors und knappen tiure,
the steeds and squires dear,

sô gibe ich iu ze stiure
so give I to-you as help

daz beste ors daz ich hân;
the best steed which I have;

dar zuo sô sîn iu undertân
there to so be to-you subject

sehs knappen die ich brâhte her;
six squires whom I brought hither;

und nemt vünf und zweinzic sper
and take five and twenty spears

daz ir des strîtès iht abe gêt.'
that you of-the fight not off go.'

dô erz alsus geteilet hêt,
when he-it thus divided had,

des vreute sich der küene man.
of-that rejoiced himself the bold man.

sehs knappen hiez er vür sich stân;
six squires bade he before himself stand;

die tâten im des sicherheit
they made to-him of-that surety

daz im ir dienest wære bereit
that to-him their service were ready

an dem selben strîte.
in the same fight.

nu was ez an der zîte
now was it at the time

daz man solde ezzen;
that one should eat;

desn wart niht vergezzen
of-it became not forgotten

im engæbe der wirt wirtschaft
to-him unless-gave the host hospitality

und alles des die überkraft
and of-all that the abundance

des er haben mohte,
which he have might,

als ez im ze nemen tohte.
as it to-him to take availed.

dar nâch bettet man in
there after bedded one him

under daz gezelt hin
under the tent thither

beidiu ûf loube und ûf gras;
both upon foliage and upon grass;

vil manic guot kulter was
very many-a good quilt was

ûf daz loup gedecket;
upon the foliage spread;

dar ûf wâren gestrecket
there upon were stretched

vil wîziu lîlachen.
very white sheets.

die knappen hiez man wachen
the squires bade one watch

die naht mit vlîze unz an den tac.
the night with diligence until to the day.

ein walt in dâ nâhen lac,
a forest to-them there near lay,

dar inne manic nahtegal
there in many-a nightingale

uobte ir wünniclîchen schal;
practiced its delightful sound;

diu vreude in in daz herze hal.
the joy to-them into the heart echoed.

nâch der naht erschein der tac
after the night appeared the day

nâch sînem sit, als er ie pflac.
after its custom, as it ever practiced.

die knappen wârn alle bereit.
the squires were all ready.

si hêten ûf diu ors geleit
they had upon the steeds laid

satel und kovertiure.
saddle and caparison.

zir zweier justiure
for-their two's joust

was in allen harte ger.
was to-them all very eager.

harnasch, schilt unde sper
harness, shield and spear

wâren bereit in beiden.
were ready for-them both.

dô begunden sich dâ kleiden
then began themselves there to-clothe

die herren an ir slâfstet;
the lords at their sleeping-place;

dar nâch sprâchens ir gebet
there after spoke-they their prayer

und bevulhen got beide ir nôt,
and commended to-God both their distress,

wand ir einem was der tôt
for of-them to-one was the death

beschert von dem andern dâ.
destined from the other there.

dô hiezen si sich wâfen sâ
then bade they themselves arm at-once

ir ietweders knappen; die
of-them each's squires; they

dienten ir herren hie
served their lords here

als si geteilet wâren.
as they divided were.

dem herren begunde swâren
to-the lord began to-grow-heavy

sîn muot harte sêre;
his mind very sorely;

wan daz er durch sîn êre
except that he for his honor

den strît niht mohte lân,
the fight not might leave,

er hêt sichs gerne abe getân,
he had himself-of-it gladly off done,

wand im wîssagte sîn muot,
for to-him foretold his mind,

als er den liuten ofte tuot
as it to-the people often does

die vor in wizzen den tôt
who before them know the death

und die doch durch der êren nôt
and who yet for the honors' need

den lîp verliesent, als er dâ.
the life lose, as he there.

den schilt hiez er im reichen sâ
the shield bade he to-him reach at-once

und saz ûf daz ors sîn.
and sat upon the steed his.

zwêne schefte îwîn,
two shafts of-yew,

dar an wâren starkiu sper,
there on were strong spears,

die brâhten in die knappen her.
those brought to-them the squires hither.

si liezen von ein ander gân
they let from one other go

daz sị ir puneiz möhten hân
that they their charge might have

und kêrten gegẹn ein ander wider;
and turned toward one other back;

diu sper druhten si dô nider,
the spears pressed they then down,

als si truoc ir gelust;
as them bore their desire;

durch die schilte ûf die brust
through the shields upon the breast

si sô vaste stâchen
they so fast stabbed

daz die schefte brâchen.
that the shafts broke.

dô nâmen si zwei andriu sper;
then took they two other spears;

zuo ein ander was in ger;
to one other was to-them eager;

zesamne kêrten si dô dâ
together turned they then there

sô vaste daz die schefte sâ
so fast that the shafts at-once

sich zarten von den îsen.
themselves tore from the irons.

daz golt begunde rîsen
the gold began to-fall

von den schilten ûf daz gras.
from the shields onto the grass.

an in beiden dannoch was
in them both still was

ganziu manheit unde kraft;
whole manhood and strength;

ir deweder dẹheiner rîterschaft
of-them neither any knighthood

sô starker nie begunde;
so strong never began;

in vil kurzer stunde
in very short hour

verstâchen si diu sper gar.
spent they the spears wholly.

zaller jungest brâhtẹ man dar
at-the-very last brought one thither

zwêne schefte eschîn,
two shafts of-ash,

als ez leider solde sîn
as it alas should be

des herren tôt an der stat.
the lord's death in the place.

her Gwîgâlois den rîter bat
lord Gwigalois the knight begged

baz ze velde kêren;
further to field to-turn;

des endorfte er in niht lêren,
of-that needed he him not teach,

wand ers im selbe hêt gedâht.
for he-it to-him self had thought.

dô wurden si zesamne brâht
then became they together brought

von den starken rossen wider.
by the strong horses back.

her Gwîgâlois der druhte nider
lord Gwigalois he pressed down

daz sper mit beiden handen;
the spear with both hands;

sînen zorn begunde er anden,
his anger began he to-avenge,

als in sîn vater lêrte;
as him his father taught;

und dô er an in kêrte,
and when he at him turned,

daz starke sper er durch in stach
the strong spear he through him stabbed

daz man in dâ tôten sach
that one him there dead saw

vallen nider ûf daz gras.
fall down onto the grass.

vil grôziu klage umb in dâ was:
very great lament for him there was:

von den liuten über al
from the people over all

wart dâ ein jæmerlîcher schal;
became there a wretched clamor;

si klagten alle dęs rîters val.
they lamented all the knight's fall.

Er was wol grôzer klage wert,
He was well of-great lament worth,

wand er hêt ie des gegert
for he had ever of-that desired

daz im der êren krône
that to-him the honors' crown

ze jungest wær ze lône
at last were as reward

gevallen umb sîn arbeit.
fallen for his toil.

daz hêt der tôt nu hin geleit,
that had the death now thither laid,

als er noch vil ofte tuot:
as it yet very often does:

er nidert mangen hôhen muot
it lowers many-a high spirit

und zevüeret die rîcheit
and destroys the richness

diu langẹ zesamne ist geleit.
which long together is laid.

er gît ouch ie nâch liebe leit. 3575
it gives also ever after joy sorrow.

Her Gwîgâlois, der küene man
Lord Gwigalois, the bold man

hiez die knappen vür sich stân.
bade the squires before himself stand.

swie ez in doch wære leit,
however it to-them yet were sorrowful,

si tâten im dẹs sicherheit —
they made to-him of-that surety—

als sị ûf den heiligen swüeren — 3580
as-if they upon the saints swore—

daz sị ze Britanje vüeren
that they to Britain should-fare

zem milten künige Artûs
to-the generous king Arthur

und sîn dâ biten in sînẹm hûs
and for-him there should-wait in his house

biz er nâch in kœme dar.
until he after them should-come there.

des swuoren si und liezenz wâr, 3585
that swore they and let-it true,

swie leide in von im wære geschehen.
however sorrowful to-them from him were happened.

doch wolden si daz gerne sehen
yet would they that gladly see

wer er wære; daz was ir muot.
who he were; that was their mind.

dô nâmen si ir herren guot,
then took they their lord's goods,
beidiu ros und ouch gewant;
both horses and also clothing;
si bunden ûf diu pfärt zehant
they bound upon the palfreys at-once
swaz si tragen solden.
whatever they carry should.
den tôten si niht wolden
the dead-man they not would
lâzen an der walstat;
leave on the battlefield;
her Gwîgâlois die knappen bat
lord Gwigalois the squires begged
daz ṣi in ze kirchen bræhten
that they him to church should-bring
und sîner sêle gedæhten
and of-his soul should-think
mit almuoṣen und mit messen,
with alms and with masses,
swaz si ze tuone wessen
whatever they to do knew
sîner sêle ze trôste
for-his soul as comfort
daz ṣi von der helle erlôste
that it from the hell freed
daz si sich des vlizzen,
that they themselves of-that applied,
und im niht harte wizzen
and him not very should-blame
umb ir lieben herren tôt;
for their dear lord's death;

si sæhen wol es gienge im nôt.
they should-see well it went to-him of-need.

dô tâten si als er gebôt.
then did they as he commanded.

Si nâmen urloup von im dâ.
They took leave from him there.

der rîter huop sich danne sâ,
the knight raised himself thence at-once,

als in diu maget lêrte;
as him the maiden taught;

mit vreuden er dô kêrte
with joys he then turned

mit ir heim ze lande.
with her home to land.

si mohte wol âne schande
she might well without disgrace

sîn rîten mit ir dô vertragen.
his riding with her then endure.

alrêrst begunde si im sagen
first began she to-him to-tell

ir mære, dô im dâ gelanc,
her tale, when to-him there succeeded,

und sagte im sîner nœte danc.
and said to-him for-his distress thanks.

si sprach 'herre, geloubet daz
she spoke 'lord, believe that

mir geviel nie rîter baz
to-me pleased never knight better

dan ir an rehter manheit.
than you in right manhood.

nu habt ir iu daz vür geleit
now have you to-you that before laid

daz ir den lîp verliesen welt
that you the life lose will

od riterlîche als ein helt
or knightly as a hero

der werlte lop erringen;
the world's praise win;

under den zwein dingen
among the two things

muoz iu morgen einz geschehen.
must to-you tomorrow one happen.

wil ez got, sô sul wir sehen
(if)-will it God, so shall we see

noch hînt daz lant ze Korntîn,
yet tonight the land at Korntin,

dar ûz diu liebe vrouwe mîn
there out-of the dear lady mine

in ir kintheit wart vertriben.
in her childhood became driven.

ir landes ist ir niht beliben
of-her land is to-her nothing remained

niwan ein burc, diu lît dran,
except a castle, which lies there-on,

daz nie dehein künic gewan
that never any king won

ein hûs sô rehte veste;
a house so right firm;

ez ist ein berc, der beste
it is a mountain, the best

den ie dehein man gesach.
which ever any man saw.

ezn wære dehein wîp sô swach
there were any woman so weak

sine behielt̨ez mit lîhter wer
unless-she held-it with light defense

immer vor des küni̇ges her.
ever against the king's host.

dar ûf ist diu vrouwe mîn,
there upon is the lady mine,

daz niht schœners möhte sîn
that nothing more-beautiful might be

in dirre werlte dan si ist.
in this world than she is.

nu hât ir unser herre Krist
now has to-her our lord Christ

nâch ir ahte ein kleinez leben
after her reckoning a small life

in ir kintheit gegeben,
in her childhood given,

als ich iu nu sagen wil.
as I to-you now tell will.

ir vater der hêt êren vil
her father he had of-honors much

und diu liebe vrouwe mîn:
and the dear lady mine:

daz guote lant ze Korntîn
the good land at Korntin

daz was ir eigen beider.
it was their own both.

mit grôzer klage leider
with great lament alas

sî wir dâ von gescheiden:
are we there from parted:

daz bûwet nû ein heiden;
it inhabits now a heathen;

Rôaz von Glois ist er genant;
Roaz of Glois is he named;

sîn manheit diu ist erkant
his manhood it is known

als wîte sô diu werlt ist.
as wide as the world is.

er hât durch sînen zouberlist
he has through his magic-cunning

beidiu sêle unde leben
both soul and life

einem tievel gegeben;
to-a devil given;

der tuot durch in wunders vil:
it does for him of-wonder much:

er vüeget im allez daz er wil;
it fits to-him all that he will;

alsô gevuocter im daz lant.
so fitted-it to-him the land.

daz was im ê vil unbekant
that was to-him before very unknown

ob er dâ künic solde sîn;
whether he there king should be;

nû hât er goldes vollen schrîn;
now has he of-gold full chest;

daz was des lieben herren mîn.
that was of-the dear lord mine.

Welt irz vernemen, ich sagiu wie
Will you-it hear, I tell-you how

der heiden daz ane gevie
the heathen that on took

daz er uns von dem lande schiet,
that he us from the land parted,

als imz sîn herre der tievel riet.
as him-it his lord the devil counseled.

ez lît enhalp Korntîn
there lies beyond Korntin

ein rîchiu grâfschaft, diu ist sîn;
a rich county, which is his;

die brâhte in sîn vater an.
it brought him his father on.

nu wart der ungetriuwe man
now became the faithless man

mînem herren heimlîch
to-my lord intimate

und diente im aller tägelîch
and served him of-all daily

als er sîn eigen wære.
as-if he his own were.

mit mangem guten mære
with many-a good tale

vreut er im ofte sînen muot,
gladdened he to-him often his mind,

als der ungetriuwe tuot:
as the faithless-one does:

swen er dem manne schaden wil,
whenever he to-the man harm will,

sô sagt er guoter mære vil
so tells he of-good tales much

und lachet in valschlîche an;
and laughs him falsely on;

als tet der ungetriuwe man.
so did the faithless man.

mîn herre der was guot
my lord he was good
unde hêt so reinen muot
and had so pure mind
daz er sichs niht bedâhte
that he himself-of-it not bethought
unz ez im den schaden brâhte
until it to-him the harm brought
dâ von er den lîp verlôs.
there from he the life lost.
owê, daz er ie erkôs
alas, that he ever chose
im ze vriunde ein den man
to-him as friend one the man
der nie deheine triuwe gewan!
who never any faith won!
deiswâr, daz was niht wol getân.
truly, that was not well done.

XIII · ROIMUNT

Roaz took the castle by treachery and slew the king and his household. The queen had gone to Roimunt, her own castle, and was spared; her daughter, then three years old, is now so beautiful that whoever wins back the land shall have her. A crowned beast will guide him to Korntin. A steward bearing the beast on his shield rides out; they break their spears, then the steward greets him and they come to Roimunt, where all welcome the champion sent by Arthur.

Sîn hûs was im bereit
His house was to-him ready
und sîn guot unverseit;
and his goods unrefused;

er hêt in in sîner pflege
he had him in his care

und beriet in alle wege
and provided-for him all ways

durch sîne grôze manheit.
for his great manhood.

dâ wider gedâht ér im leit
there against thought he to-him sorrow

ze tuone aller tägelîch.
to do of-all daily.

daz was iedoch unbillîch
that was yet unfitting

daz er wider minne
that he against love

sîne valsche sinne
his false wits

im ze schaden kêrte,
to-him to harm turned,

als in sin schande lêrte.
as him his disgrace taught.

eins morgens dô der tac ûf gie
one morning when the day up went

und daz der wahtær verlie
and that the watchman left

die huote an der zinne,
the guard on the battlement,

als er des wart inne
when he of-that became aware

daz diu porte was ûf getân,
that the gate was up opened,

dô kom der ungetriuwe man
then came the faithless man

daz sîn niemen wart gewar
that of-him no-one became aware

mit vier hundert rîtern dar;
with four hundred knights thither;

die wârn ze harnasche gar.
they were in harness wholly.

Als er daz bürgetor gevie,
When he the castle-gate seized,

sîn ors er dô stên lie
his steed he then stand let

und îlte mit zorne ûf den sal,
and hastened with anger up-into the hall,

dâ die rîter über al
where the knights over all

mit grôzen zühten sliefen.
with great breeding slept.

die vînde si an liefen
the foes them at ran

und sluogen daz gesinde
and slew the household

von kinde ze kinde,
from child to child,

von manne ze manne;
from man to man;

nieman mohte danne
no-one might then

dem gâhen tôde enbresten;
the sudden death escape;

dâ lac von den gesten
there lay of the guests

vil manic edel rîter tôt.
very many-a noble knight dead.

owê der klägelîchen nôt
alas the lamentable distress

daz si alsô verdurben
that they so perished

und âne wẹr ersturben!
and without defense died!

wie möhte ein mort grœzer wesen!
how might a murder greater be!

man liez ir einen niht genesen.
one let of-them one not survive.

dâ wart mîn lieber herre erslagen;
there became my dear lord slain;

den sol diu werlt immer klagen:
him shall the world ever lament:

an im was manheit unde jugent,
in him was manhood and youth,

sterke, wîsheit unde tugent;
strength, wisdom and virtue;

mit disen dingen minnẹt er ie
with these things loved he ever

die werlt, und vergaz doch nie
the world, and forgot yet never

sîn der imz gegeben hêt,
him who him-it given had,

in des gewalt diu werlt stêt;
in whose power the world stands;

dem dientẹ mîn lieber herre
him served my dear lord

und minnẹt in alsô verre
and loved him so far

mit almuosẹn und mit messen
with alms and with masses

daz ims die liute wessen.
that to-him-it the people knew.

ich wil iu sagen wes er pflac:
I will to-you tell what he practiced:

ern liez nie deheinen tac
he let never any day

ern teilte selbẹ mit sîner hant;
unless-he shared self with his hand;

swaz er armer liute vant,
whatever he of-poor people found,

die beriet der tugentrîche man.
them provided-for the virtue-rich man.

des sol in got geniezen lân,
of-that shall him God enjoy let,

wand er im ie was undertân.
for he to-him ever was subject.

Mîn altvrouwe was gevarn —
My old-lady was fared—

als si got wolde bewarn
as-if her God would guard

und ez ir sælde solde sîn —
and it her blessedness should be—

ûz dem lande ze Korntîn
out-of the land at Korntin

ûf ir hûs ze Roimunt, —
up-to her house at Roimunt,—

daz tuon ich iu entiuschen kunt:
that make I to-you in-German known:

Künigesberc hieze ez hie —
King's-mountain were-called it here—

daz ir ir vater z'eigen lie
which to-her her father as-own left

und allez daz dar umbe lît.
and all that there about lies.

mîn juncvróuwe was zer selben zît
my young-lady was at-the same time

dô ditze mort hie geschach,
when this murder here happened,

als es mîn vrouwe selbe jach,
as it my lady self said,

niwan drîer jâr alt.
only three years old.

nû ist si sô wol gestalt
now is she so well shaped

und hât einen sô schœnen lîp
and has a so beautiful body

daz wæn iender lebe ein wîp
that I-believe anywhere lives a woman

in allem disem rîche
in all this realm

diu sich ir gelîche.
who herself to-her compares.

si hât schœne unde jugent,
she has beauty and youth,

geburt unde ganze tugent.
birth and whole virtue.

ich erkenne wol ir reinen muot:
I know well her pure mind:

si ist gewizzen unde guot.
she is discreet and good.

mîn vrouwe pfligt ir harte wol,
my lady takes-care of-her very well,

als ein muoṭẹr ir tohter sol:
as a mother of-her daughter shall:

si hât si in ir huote
she has her in her keeping

mit lîbe und mit guote.
with body and with goods.

durch ir schœne hât manic man
for her beauty has many-a man

ze Korntîn den lîp verlân
at Korntin the life left

und lît ouch noch vil manger tôt.
and lies also yet very many-a-one dead.

owê der klägelîchen nôt!
alas the lamentable distress!

noch machet si̯ liehtiu ougen rôt.
yet makes she bright eyes red.

Ich sagiu wie daz komen ist:
I tell-you how that come is:

wir haben vunden einen list
we have found a cunning

der uns benamen vrumen muoz
which us assuredly profit must

und sol uns leides werden buoz.
and shall to-us of-sorrow become remedy.

wirn wellen die juncvrouwen mîn
we will the young-lady mine

ân daz lant ze Korntîn
without the land at Korntin

nieman gebèn ze wîbe,
to-no-one give as wife,

wan der mit sînem lîbe
except who with his body

daz guote lant erwerben mac;
the good land win may;

der hât ouch danne vür den tac
he has also then for the day

genuoc ze geben swem er wil;
enough to give to-whomever he will;

sô wirt ím daz beste spil
so becomes to-him the best game

daz man im gît ze wîbe
that one to-him gives as wife

eine magt diu sînem lîbe
a maiden who to-his body

wirt ein übergulde:
becomes an over-gilding:

swer die êrsten schulde
whoever the first debt

von ir lîbe nemen sol,
from her body take shall,

dem wirt herzenlîche wol,
to-him becomes heartily well,

wand ez hât diu sælicheit
for it has the blessedness

ir wunsch sô gar an si geleit
its ideal so wholly on her laid

daz si mit lobè die krône treit.
that she with praise the crown bears.

Ich lâze iuch morgen an ir sehen
I let you tomorrow on her see

daz ir des selbe müezet jehen.
that you of-that self must say.

ob diu werlt einem man
if the world to-one man

älliù wærẹ undertân,
all were subject,

und daz im gelîche
and that to-him alike

älliu künicrîche
all kingdoms

dienten gar vür eigen,
served wholly as own,

dem enkunde ich niht gezeigen
to-him could I not show

noch gerâten ze wîbe
nor counsel as wife

dẹheine magt diu sînem lîbe
any maiden who to-his body

sô rehte wol gezæme
so right well would-befit

und diu ouch sô genæme
and who also so pleasing

an allen dingen wære;
in all things were;

si ist unwandelbære
she is unchangeable

an lîbe und an sinnen.
in body and in wits.

sold ich die schœnen minnen,
(if)-should I the beautiful-one love,

daz ich niht wære ein wîp,
so-that I not were a woman,

dar umbe wolde ich mînen lîp
there for would I my body

immer vüeren veile
ever carry for-sale

und wolde in urteile
and would in judgment

mîne sêle setzen.'
my soul set.'

sus begunde si in wetzen
thus began she him to-whet

unde reizen ûf den tôt.
and to-incite toward the death.

des was ir weizgot vil unnôt,
of-that was to-her God-knows very needless,

wand er pflac solher manheit
for he practiced such manhood

daz sîn lîp was bereit
that his body was ready

allen [den] die sîn geruochten,
to-all [those] who of-him deigned,

die ez an in suochten
who it in him sought

und die sîn wert wâren.
and who of-him worthy were.

er hêt in sînen jâren
he had in his years

und in sîner kintheit
and in his childhood

der werlte lop alsô bejeit
the world's praise so hunted

daz man sîn noch gedenken muoz.
that one of-him yet think must.

swer welle daz im werde buoz
whoever will that to-him become remedy

sîner schande die er hât,
of-his disgrace which he has,

der lâze sîne missetât
he leave his misdeed

und volge dẹn besten; deist mîn rât.
and follow the best; that-is my counsel.

Her Gwîgâlois sprach zuo der maget,
Lord Gwigalois spoke to the maiden,

dô si im alsô hêt gesaget
when she to-him so had told

'juncvrouwe, nu sagt mir mê
'young-lady, now tell me more

wiez umb die âventiure stê
how-it about the adventure stands

und wer mich dar bringe
and who me thither bring

od mit welhem dinge
or with which thing

ich si vinde; daz tuot mir kunt.'
I it find; that make to-me known.'

dô sprach diu maget an der stunt
then spoke the maiden at the hour

'herre, daz wil ich iu sagen
'lord, that will I to-you tell

und wil iuch des niht verdagen
and will you of-that not keep-silent

daz iu dar zuo gevrumen mac:
what to-you there to profit may:

nimmer wirt dehein tac
never becomes any day

man sehe vür daz hûs gân
one see before the house go

ein tier, daz ist sô wol getân,
a beast, which is so well made,

und wil ich im der wârheit jehen,
and will I to-it the truth grant,

daz ich niht schœners hân gesehen;
that I nothing more-beautiful have seen;

ich sagiu wiez geschaffen ist:
I tell-you how-it shaped is:

ez hât unser herre Krist
it has our lord Christ

sînen vlîz dar an geleit.
his diligence there on laid.

daz tier ûf sînem houbet treit
the beast upon its head bears

eine guldîne krône;
a golden crown;

diu ist bewahsen schône
it is overgrown nicely

mit zwein swarzen hornen;
with two black horns;

mit beiden orten vornen
with both points in-front

ist si sô bewunden
is it so wound

daz wir niht enkunden
that we not could

mit deheinen unsern sinnen
with any our wits

si dâ von gewinnen,
it there from win,

ob ez uns sîn gunde.
if it to-us of-it granted.

ez hât in sînem munde
it has in its mouth

die hitze, als ichz hân vernomen,
the heat, as I-it have heard,

daz niemen mac dar zuo komen
that no-one may there to come

der im iht schaden wil;
who to-it aught harm will;

vrumer rîter hât ez vil
valiant knights has it many

mit im geleitet in den tôt.
with itself led into the death.

welt ir bestên die selben nôt,
(if)-will you withstand the same distress,

sô merket rehte war ez var.
so mark rightly whither it fare.

von sînem houbet ist ez gar
from its head is it wholly

geschaffen als ein lêbart.
shaped as a leopard.

ez hât erkorn im eine vart,
it has chosen to-itself a way,

diu ist niemen mê bekant:
which is to-no-one more known:

einen stîc in daz lant,
a path into the land,

durch den walt, zuo Korntîn;
through the forest, to Korntin;

dâ sult ir im volgen în.'
there shall you it follow in.'

er sprach 'triuwen, daz sol sîn!'
he spoke 'in-faith, that shall be!'

Dô er daz wort vol sprach,
When he the word fully spoke,

die schœnen burc er dô sach
the beautiful castle he then saw

bî im ligen nâhen;
by him lie near;

dar ûz si gegẹn in sâhen
there out-of they toward them saw

einen rîter gwâfent rîten,
a knight armed ride,

als er wolde strîten.
as-if he would fight.

er reit ein ors wol getân.
he rode a steed well made.

einen wîzen halsberc vuorter an;
a white hauberk wore-he on;

den bedahte ein grüener wâfenroc;
it covered a green surcoat;

dar ûf was ein rêchboc
there upon was a roebuck

gesniten von samîte
cut of samite

an ietwederre sîte.
on each side.

sîn helm der was rîche,
his helm it was rich,

vil harte höveschlîche
very very courteously

mit rôten keln bedecket;
with red throat-furs covered;

dar umbe was gestrecket
there about was stretched

ein strieme wîz härmîn;
a stripe white of-ermine;

oben was gestecket drîn
above was stuck there-in

ein schüzzel von golde,
a dish of gold,

dâ bî man wizzen solde
there by one know should

daz er dâ truhsæze was.
that he there steward was.

ein timît grüene alsam ein gras
a dimity green as a grass

was gebunden an sîn sper.
was bound on his spear.

einen niuwen schilt vuort er;
a new shield carried he;

dâ was daz tier gemâlet an,
there was the beast painted on,

als ich iu gesaget hân,
as I to-you told have,

daz in dâ leiten solde;
which him there lead should;

von lazûre und von golde
of azure and of gold

was ez harte rîche
was it very richly

gevüllet meisterlîche;
filled masterfully;

daz was ir wâfen ze Roimunt.
that was their arms at Roimunt.

der rîter sprach 'nu tuot mir kunt
the knight spoke 'now make to-me known

und sagt mir rehte, wer ist der
and tell me rightly, who is he

der dort kumt geriten her?
who there comes ridden hither?

ich wæne er prîs welle bejagen.'
I believe he prize will win.'

si sprach 'herre, daz wil ich iu sagen:
she spoke 'lord, that will I to-you tell:

ez ist ein der tiurste man
it is one of-the dearest man

der rîters namen ie gewan
who knight's name ever won

an tugent und an manheit;
in virtue and in manhood;

iu ist von im vil unverseit
to-you is from him very unrefused

swes ir mit im beginnen welt;
whatever you with him begin will;

des lîbes ist er gar ein helt
of-the body is he wholly a hero

und ist truhsæze hie;
and is steward here;

rîterschaft die minnẹt er ie.
knighthood it loves he ever.

vermîde er iuch, sô ist mîn rât
(if)-avoid he you, so is my counsel

daz ir in gerne rîten lât, 3930
that you him gladly ride let,

wand iuch dâ misselingen mac.'
for to-you there miscarry may.'

der rîter sprach 'daz wære ein slac
the knight spoke 'that were a blow

aller mîner êren
of-all my honors

und soldich von im kêren,
and should-I from him turn,

sît ich nâch rîterschefte var; 3935
since I after knighthood fare;

des himels keiser mich bewar!
the heaven's emperor me guard!

ich wil benamen gegẹn im dar.'
I will assuredly toward him thither.'

Sus kêrtẹr über die heide.
Thus turned-he over the heath.

die herren begunden beide
the lords began both

die schilte vazzen vür diu knie; 3940
the shields grasp before the knees;

ir ietweder sîgen lie
of-them each sink let

gegẹn dem andern sînen schaft;
toward the other his shaft;

sus kômen si mit grôzer kraft
thus came they with great strength

zesamne ûf der heide;
together upon the heath;

si verstâchen beide
they spent both

alsô rîterlîche ir sper
so knightly their spears

daz niemen kunde wizzen wer
that no-one could know who

daz sîne baz hêt vertân.
the his better had spent.

der truhsæze reit in wider an;
the steward rode him back on;

bi dem zoume vienc ern dô
by the bridle caught he-him then

vil minniclîche und sprach alsô
very lovingly and spoke so

'ir sult hie willekomen sîn
'you shall here welcome be

und wizzet bî den triuwen mîn
and know by the faith mine

daz iu mîn dienest ist bereit.'
that to-you my service is ready.'

nu sach er wâ dort her reit
now saw he where there hither rode

diu maget wider in daz lant
the maiden back into the land

die sîn vrouwe ḥêt ûz gesant.
whom his lady had out sent.

vor ir zôch man ir gewin
before her drew one her prize

gegen der schœnen bürge hin:
toward the beautiful castle thither:

den sitich, daz phärt wol getân
the parrot, the palfrey well made

als ez mit manheit gewan
as it with manhood won

her Gwîgâlois, der wîgant.
lord Gwigalois, the fighter.

der truhsæze nam in bî der hant
the steward took him by the hand

und kêrte dâ diu maget reit;
and turned where the maiden rode;

sîn getriuwer gruoz was ir bereit,
his faithful greeting was to-her ready,

wan si hêt grôze nôt erliten.
for she had great distress suffered.

mit ein ander si dô riten,
with one other they then rode,

die drî gesellen an den berc;
the three companions up-to the mountain;

vor in zôch daz getwerc
before them drew the dwarf

daz schœne pfärit mit der hant;
the beautiful palfrey with the hand;

sus brâhtę diu maget in daz lant
thus brought the maiden into the land

dar nâch si ûz was gesant.
there after she out was sent.

Rîter unde knehte
Knights and servants

iegelîcher nâch sînem rehte
each after his right

enpfienc den rîter und die maget;
received the knight and the maiden;

in beiden was dâ unversaget
to-them both was there unrefused

guot gemach und êre,
good comfort and honor,

und kunden si iht mêre
and (if)-could they aught more

in ze liebe hân erdâht,
for-them for love have devised,

daz wære benamen dâ volbrâht,
that were assuredly there accomplished,

wand in geviel nie rîter baz.
for to-them pleased never knight better.

si sprâchen alle 'ist er daz
they spoke all 'is he that-one

den der künic Artûs
whom the king Arthur

mîner vrouwen her ze hûs
to-my lady hither to house

ze helfe hât gesant,
for help has sent,

und der uns daz reine lant
and who for-us the pure land

erledigen sol ze Korntîn?
free shall at Korntin?

der sol hie willekomen sîn
he shall here welcome be

uns allen ze trôste!
to-us all for comfort!

der mange sêle erlôste
who many-a soul freed

ûz der helle mit sîner kraft
out-of the hell with his strength

und der âne meisterschaft
and who without mastery

die werlt alle werden hiez
the world all become bade

und der den vâlant verstiez
and who the devil thrust-out

von dem himelrîche
from the heaven-realm

durch daz er im gelîche
for that he to-him alike

wolde setzen sînen stuol —
would set his seat—

er warf in in der helle pfuol:
he threw him into the hell's pool:

alsô müez vallèn von sîner hant
so must fall from his hand

der heidenische vâlant
the heathenish devil

der mangen rîter hât erslagen!
who many-a knight has slain!

got sol im niht mê vertragen
God shall to-him not more endure

sînen vil grôzen übermuot
his very great arrogance

und sînen gwalt den er tuot.'
and his violence which he does.'

diu rede dûhte den rîter guot.
the speech seemed to-the knight good.

The maiden tells her lady and Larie of the knight. Gwigalois is dressed in a robe from Syria and brought before the queen and fifty ladies, and at the sight of Larie love takes him captive. He vows to win her and her land or die; the queen promises them if he overcomes the heathen. At Larie's request he stays the night, and the poet speaks of the eyes as the heart's messengers.

Ein ende hêt diu klage dô;
An end had the lament then;

si lachten alle und wâren vrô.
they laughed all and were glad.

diu magt bevalch den wîgant
the maiden commended the fighter

dem truhsæzen bî der hant
to-the steward by the hand

4010 und den besten rîtern dâ.
and to-the best knights there.

zuo ir vrouwen gie si sâ;
to her lady went she at-once;

der brâhte ṣi liebiu mære
to-her brought she dear tidings

wie mit ir komen wære
how with her come were

der aller besten rîter ein
of-the of-all best knights one

4015 den diu sunne ie beschein;
whom the sun ever shone-on;

den hêt der künic Artûs
him had the king Arthur

ir ze helfe in ir hûs
to-her for help into her house

von sîner mässenîe gesant.
from his household sent.

dô neic diu vrouwe in daz lant
then bowed the lady into the land

dem künige von Britanje.
to-the king of Britain.

diu süeze gamanje
the sweet company

enpfie vil wol die reinen maget.
received very well the pure maiden.

owî, waz dâ wart gesaget
oh, what there became told

mære von ir reise!
of-tidings of her journey!

si zalte mange vreise
she recounted many-a peril

die si von vorhten leit
which she from fears suffered

als ir geselle streit.
when her companion fought.

ouch lie si ir vrouwen
also let she her lady

diu kleinôt schouwen
the jewels behold

diu ir her Gwîgâlois gewan,
which to-her lord Gwigalois won,

als ich iu gesaget hân,
as I to-you told have,

mit micheler manheit.
with great manhood.

ir getwerc daz phärit vür si reit
her dwarf the palfrey before her rode

und vuorte den sitich und den hunt;
and led the parrot and the hound;

dô ahten si vür tûsent pfunt
then valued they at thousand pounds

daz gereite und daz vogelhûs.
the harness and the bird-house.

dem milten künige Artûs
to-the generous king Arthur

gnâdeten sị der êren.
thanked they for-the honors.

diu magt begunde mêren
the maiden began to-increase

dem jungen rîter sînen prîs:
to-the young knight his prize:

si lobet in en mangen wîs
she praised him in many ways

vor ir juncvrouwen:
before her young-lady:

wie wol er kunde houwen
how well he could hew

helm unde schilte
helms and shields

und daz in niht bevilte
and that him nothing irked

ze tuone durch dehein wîp;
to do for any woman;

er wolde vẹrliesen sînen lîp
he would lose his life

durch si, des wær im gedâht;
for her, of-that were to-him thought;

sus hêt si in ûz brâht.
thus had she him out brought.

des wart diu wirtinne vrô.
of-that became the hostess glad.

ir juncvróuwen gnâdete si dô
her young-lady thanked she then

der ängestlîchen arbeit
for-the fearful toil

die si ûf der verte leit,
which she on the journey suffered,

als si ir selbe hêt geseit.
as she to-her self had told.

Nu berieten sich die drîe,
Now counseled themselves the three,

diu schœne Lârîe,
the beautiful Larie,

ir muoter und diu selbe maget
her mother and the same maiden

diu in diu mære hêt gesaget,
who to-them the tidings had told,

wie man den rîṭęr enpfienge
how one the knight received

daz er dâ von gevienge
that he there from should-catch

guoten willen in den tôt.
good will into the death.

allen ir vrouwen si gebôt
to-all her ladies she commanded

daz si sich rîche kleiten
that they themselves richly clothed

und sich dar zuo bereiten,
and themselves there for readied,

als er în gienge,
when he in should-go,

daz man in sô enpfienge
that one him so should-receive

daz er dâ von würde vrô;
that he there from should-become glad;

daz lobten si mit willen dô.
that promised they with will then.

Nȩ́rejâ diu maget hiez
Nereja the maiden was-called

diu von dem rîter trôst gehiez,
who from the knight comfort promised,

mit der er dar komen was.
with whom he thither come was.

in einen garten ûf ein gras
into a garden onto a grass

vuort in der truhsæz bî der hant;
led him the steward by the hand;

dô schuṭẹr abe sîn îsengwant
then shook-he off his iron-clothing

undẹr einer linden grüene;
under a linden green;

her Gwîgâlois der küene
lord Gwigalois the bold

kuolte sich und ruowet dâ.
cooled himself and rested there.

dô brâhte im Nêrejâ
then brought him Nereja

von pfelle harte rîch gewant;
of brocade very rich clothing;

daz hêt ze liebe im gesant
that had for love to-him sent

diu schœne magt Lârîe;
the beautiful maiden Larie;

ez was ir von Syrîe
it was to-her from Syria

verre gesant über sê.
far sent over sea.

noch brâht im diu maget mê:
yet brought him the maiden more:

lînwât, wîz alsam ein snê.
linen, white as a snow.

zuo zim saz si ûf den klê.
to him sat she onto the clover.

sus kleite sich der küene man.
thus clothed himself the bold man.

zwô scharláches hosen streich er an
two scarlet hose drew he on

mit grôzem vlîze an diu bein.
with great diligence onto the legs.

ôwî, wie wol et an im schein
oh, how well just in him shone

geburt unde manheit!
birth and manhood!

gewizzen unde sælicheit
discretion and blessedness

hêt got mit vlîze an in geleit.
had God with diligence in him laid.

Dô der rîter wart gekleit
When the knight became clothed

und er nâch sîner arbeit
and he after his toil

so minniclîche gâbe enphie,
so lovely gift received,

des gnâdeter got unde gie
for-that thanked-he God and went

mit der juncvrouwen hin
with the young-lady thither

vür die edeln künigin
before the noble queen

dâ diu ûf ir sal saz.
where she up-in her hall sat.

ôwî, herre got, waz
oh, lord God, what

er dâ schœner vrouwen vant!
he there of-beautiful ladies found!

die hêten sich in rîch gewant
they had themselves in rich clothing

gekleit manger slahte,
clothed of-many kinds,

iegelîche nâch ir ahte.
each after her reckoning.

vünfzic was ir über al;
fifty were of-them over all;

drîzic lâze ich âne zal
thirty let I without number

sô daz ich si niht prîse,
so that I them not praise,

wan si niht in der wîse
for they not in the manner

gelîch den zweinzic wâren
alike to-the twenty were

an geburt noch an gebâren,
in birth nor in bearing,

an schœne noch an rîcheit;
in beauty nor in richness;

die zweinzic wâren sô gekleit
the twenty were so clothed

von pfelle und von samîte
in brocade and in samite

daz ich dâ wider strîte
that I there against dispute

daz man nu iht vinde
that one now aught find

under dẹheinem gesinde
among any household

alsô rîche vrouwen.
so rich ladies.

dô begunder umbe schouwen
then began-he about to-look

und nam ir aller rehte war;
and took of-them all rightly heed;

dô wâren si ze lobe gar
then were they for praise wholly

und ze wunsche wol gestalt;
and to ideal well shaped;

ir sælde diu was manicvalt
their blessedness it was manifold

an lîbe und an gewizzen;
in body and in discretion;

des besten si sich vlizzen
of-the best they themselves applied

vür ein ander alle dâ.
before one other all there.

dô sach er undẹr in sitzen sâ
then saw he among them sit at-once

vrouwen Lârîẹn, die schœnen maget
lady Larie, the beautiful maiden

von der schœne im was gesaget
of whose beauty to-him was told

michel wunder; dạz was ouch wâr;
great wonder; that was also true;

got hêt sînen vlîz gar
God had his diligence wholly

ze wunsche wol an si geleit:
to ideal well on her laid:

an lîbe und an sælicheit
in body and in blessedness

diu reine vür si alle was
the pure-one before them all was

geliutert als ein spiegelglas.
purified as a mirror-glass.

hie vant er sînes herzen bluot.
here found he his heart's blood.

beidiu lîp unde muot
both body and mind

gap er ir tougenlîche dâ.
gave he to-her secretly there.

vrou Minne vie den rîter sâ
lady Love caught the knight at-once

und zôch in in ir hamît
and drew him into her enclosure

gewalticlîche âne strît,
powerfully without strife,

daz er sich niht mohte erwern;
that he himself not might defend;

er muose ir sichern unde swern
he must to-her pledge and swear

ze tuone swaz si dûhte guot;
to do whatever her seemed good;

ze gîsel muose er ir den muot
as hostage must he to-her the mind

geben und daz herze sîn,
give and the heart his,

daz diu beidiu muosen sîn
that they both must be

ir gevangen biz an ir tôt;
her captives until to their death;

swaz man ze tuone im gebot
whatever one to do him commanded

durch si, daz dûhte in allez swach,
for her, that seemed to-him all slight,

swie im doch sîn herze brach
however to-him yet his heart broke

dô er die schœnen alrêrst sach.
when he the beautiful-one first saw.

Vrou Minne nam in mit ir kraft
Lady Love took him with her strength

und zôch in in ir meisterschaft
and drew him into her mastery

gewalticlîche âne wer;
powerfully without defense;

der ê vlühtic tet ein her
he-who before fleeing made a host

und mangen vrumen rîter vie,
and many-a valiant knight captured,

dern kunde sich gevristen nie
he could himself preserve never

mit deheiner sîner kraft
with any his strength

ern müese dulden meisterschaft
unless-he must suffer mastery

von der starken minne.
from the strong love.

hie liez er sîne sinne
here left he his wits

bî der mägde wol getân;
by the maiden well made;

ir grôziu schœne gesigte im an
her great beauty conquered him on

daz er ir nimmer mê vergaz,
that he her never more forgot,

wan si sîn herze dâ besaz
for she his heart there possessed

mit jâmer, sô daz im nie mê
with grief, so that to-him never more

von deheinem wîbe geschach sô wê.
from any woman happened so woe.

des gwaltes was er ungewon;
of-the violence was he unaccustomed;

ich sagiu daz im dâ von
I tell-you that to-him there from

deste wirs muose sîn.
the worse must be.

gegẹn im gie diu künigîn;
toward him went the queen;

ir tohter nam si bî der hant;
her daughter took she by the hand;

diu schœnẹ Lârîẹ was si genant
the beautiful Larie was she named

si enpfiengen in mit triuwen wol,
they received him with faith well,

als man [die] lieben vriunt sol;
as one [the] dear friends shall;

dar nâch die vrouwen über al.
there after the ladies over all.

vil grôziu vreude âne schal
very great joy without clamor

huop sich mit zühten undẹr in dâ.
raised itself with breeding among them there.

diu vrouwe hiez in sitzen sâ
the lady bade him sit at-once

und klaget im ir herzeleit;
and lamented to-him her heart-sorrow;

der rîter sprach ‘ich bin bereit
the knight spoke ‘I am ready

durch iuch ze rîten in den tôt;
for you to ride into the death;

ezn ist dehein sô grôziu nôt
it is no so great distress

ichn bestê si gerne und sî ir vrô,
unless-I withstand it gladly and be of-it glad,

ob der rede ist alsô
if of-the speech is so

als mir Nȩ́rejâ hât gesaget:
as to-me Nereja has told:

daz man daz lant und die maget
that one the land and the maiden

mit manheit erwerben sol.
with manhood win shall.

ez tuot mir sanfte unde wol,
it does to-me soft and well,

swaz leides mir dâ von geschiht.’
whatever of-sorrow to-me there from happens.’

diu vrouwe sprach ‘ichn hils iuch niht,
the lady spoke ‘I hide-it you not,

wand ichz alsô gevestent hân —
for I-it so made-fast have—

gesiget ir dem heiden an —
(if)-conquer you the heathen on—

[daz ich gote getrûwe wol
[that I to-God trust well

daz ichz v́ch geben sol],
that I-it to-you give shall],

mit mannen und mit mâgen.
with men and with kinsmen.

dô begunde in des betrâgen
then began him of-that to-weary

daz er sich sûmen solde;
that he himself delay should;

mit urloube er dô wolde
with leave he then would

gegẹn dem lande sîn geriten.
toward the land be ridden.

dô begunde in diu maget biten
then began him the maiden to-beg

dạz er belibè mit ir die naht;
that he should-remain with her the night;

daz gap im vreude unde maht,
that gave him joy and might,

wand er die schœnen gerne sach.
for he the beautiful-one gladly saw.

mit grôzen zühten er dô sprach
with great breeding he then spoke

'ir sult gebieten über mich,
'you shall command over me,

wan swaz ir welt, daz tuon ich;
for whatever you will, that do I;

und wizzet sicherlîche:
and know surely:

wæren mîn älliu rîche,
were mine all realms,

sô daz ich keiser wære,
so that I emperor were,

der êren ich enbære
of-the honors I would-forgo

ê ich verliezẹ iuwer gebot.
before I left your command.

ir sult ez lâzen âne spot
you shall it leave without mockery

daz ich iuch, vrouwe, minne,
that I you, lady, love,

wand ir habt mîne sinne
for you have my wits

gevangen und daz herze mîn;
captured and the heart mine;

diu müezen bî iu immer sîn
they must by you ever be

mit triuwen biz an mînen tôt.'
with faith until to my death.'

vür ir vüeze er sich bôt
before her feet he himself offered

mit ûf gerahten henden.
with up stretched hands.

er sprach 'sich muoz verenden
he spoke 'itself must end

mîn lîp nâch iuwern gnâden gar;
my body after your graces wholly;

dise reise die ich var
this journey which I fare

dâ ich den lîp verliesen sol
where I the life lose shall

daz tuot mir herzenlîche wol,
that does to-me heartily well,

wand ez durch iuch geschehen muoz.'
for it for you happen must.'

der mägde kuste er an den vuoz
to-the maiden kissed he on the foot

vor vreuden und ergap sich ir.
for joys and gave-up himself to-her.

er sprach 'vrouwe, ditz ist mir
he spoke 'lady, this is to-me

diu meiste vreudẹ diech ie gewan
the greatest joy which-I ever won

daz ich die vreise sol bestân
that I the peril shall withstand

dâ mit man iuch erwerben mac;
there with one you win may;

got lâze mich den selben tac
God let me the same day

geleben daz ich in bestê,
live-to that I him withstand,

swiez halt mir dar nâch ergê,
however-it even to-me there after goes,

der iuch des landès verstôzen hât!'
who you from-the land thrust has!'

'got gebe iu helfe unde rât!'
'God give you help and counsel!'

sprach diu maget wol getân.
spoke the maiden well made.

den rîter hiez si ûf stân
the knight bade she up stand

und erzeicte im mit den ougen
and showed him with the eyes

vor ir muoter tougen
before her mother secretly

daz er ir was alsam der lîp.
that he to-her was as the body.

des pflegent noch diu reinen wîp
of-that take-care yet the pure women

daz si in diu herze sehent,
that they into the hearts look,

dar inne suochent unde spehent
there in seek and spy

durch des mannes ougen,
through the man's eyes,

wan swaz daz herze tougen
for whatever the heart secretly

wider den vriunt valsches hât,
against the friend of-falseness has,

daz ouge ez nimmer verlât
the eye it never leaves

ezn meldez mit dem blicke;
unless-it betray-it with the glance;

ez wenket harte dicke
it wavers very often

an im ûf unde nider
on him up and down

und zücket sich vil gâhes wider;
and draws itself very quickly back;

ezn siht niht güetlîche dar,
it looks not kindly thither,

niwan daz ez neme war
except that it take heed

ob iht ze merken an im sî;
whether aught to mark on him be;

dâ ẹrkennet die valschen bî.
there know the false by.

als ich mich versinnen kan:
as I myself understand can:

swâ diu ougẹn ein ander an
wherever the eyes one another on

lange sehent âne wanc,
long look without wavering,

daz dâ herze und [ir] gedanc
that there heart and [their] thought

mit triuwen zuo ein ander stât;
with faith to one other stands;

swâ ab der blic sô schiere ergât,
wherever but the glance so quickly goes,

dâ enist niht ganzer triuwe bî,
there is not whole faith by,

ezn kome alsô daz ez sî
unless-it come so that it be

daz sîn die liute werden gwar:
that of-it the people become aware:

sô lâze er sîn sehen gar,
so leave he of-his looking wholly,

ern blickẹ dan underwîlen dar.
unless-he glance then at-times thither.

XV · THE BURNING KNIGHTS

From the hall Gwigalois sees a fire at Korntin that burns every night; the steward says the land can be entered only by following the beast. After mass and a blessing, with a protecting letter from the priest and a magic bread from Larie, he follows the beast through the forest and over the drawbridge into Korntin. There a troop of black knights is fighting a tournament, and he rides at them to joust.

Als tet im diu reine maget.
So did to-him the pure maiden.

waz dâ mære wart gesaget
what there of-tales became told

undẹr in von guoten dingen!
among them of good things!

si kundẹn im wol geringen
they could for-him well lighten

sînen muot mit süezem spil;
his mind with sweet play;

dâ was kurzewîle vil
there was of-pastime much

von süezer ougen weide.
from sweet eyes' pasture.

ezn geschach nie man sô leide
it happened never man so sorrowful

und solder undẹr in sîn gewesen,
and should-he among them be been,

er wær vor leide gar genesen,
he were from sorrow wholly recovered,

wan dâ was michel rîcheit.
for there was great richness.

innen des wart in geseit
inside of-that became to-them told

si solden ûf ezzen gân.
they should up to-eat go.

den rîter hiez man ûf stân
the knight bade one up stand

von der kurzewîle;
from the pastime;

ez dûhte in wol ein mîle
it seemed to-him well a mile

dô er von ir ze tische gie.
when he from her to table went.

grœzer êre erbôt man nie,
greater honor offered one never,

wedẹr ê noch sît, deheinem man
neither before nor afterward, to-any man

als im mit willẹn dâ wart getân.
as to-him with will there became done.

dô si mit vreuden gâzen
when they with joys ate

und dar nâch gesâzen,
and there after sat,

die vrouwen gâben im guot naht;
the ladies gave him good night;

sus schieden si sich âne braht.
thus parted they themselves without noise.

der tac hêt ein ende hie.
the day had an end here.

her Gwîgâlois dô slâfen gie
lord Gwigalois then to-sleep went

ûf einen wünniclîchen sal.
up-to a delightful hall.

dâ sach er von der mûrę zetal
there saw he from the wall down-below

eine brunst in dem walde;
a blaze in the forest;

dô vrâgęt er alsô balde
then asked he so quickly

wâ diu brunst möhte sîn.
where the blaze might be.

si sprâchen ‘ez ist ze Korntîn,
they spoke ‘it is at Korntin,

dâ unser herre nam den tôt.
where our lord took the death.

man hœręt dâ jâmer unde nôt
one hears there grief and distress

die langen naht unz an den tac.
the long night until to the day.

niemen ez erleschen mac
no-one it quench may

unz daz der tac ûf gêt;
until that the day up goes;

daz hûs ab dannẹ dâ ganzez stêt,
the house but then there whole stands,

unverbrunnen alsam ê.
unburnt as before.

man hœrẹt dâ niwan wê! wê!
one hears there nothing-but woe! woe!

schrîen die langen naht;
cry the long night;

des tages ist ez âne braht
of-the day is it without noise

und alles schalles lære.
and of-all clamor empty.

ez ist uns ein swære
it is to-us a heaviness

daz wir dẹs niht mugèn gesehen
that we of-it not may see

wâ von od wie ez sî geschehen.
where from or how it be happened.

ez hâtz getriben wol zehẹn jâr:
it has-it driven well ten years:

des nahtes sô verbrinnẹt ez gar
of-the night so burns-up it wholly

und stêt iedoch des tages dâ.'
and stands yet of-the day there.'

der rîter sprach 'nu sagt mir wâ
the knight spoke 'now tell me where

diu strâze durch den walt gê.'
the road through the forest go.'

der truhsæze sprach 'owê!
the steward spoke 'alas!

jâne gêt niht weges leider dar:
indeed goes no way alas thither:

ein breitez mos hât ez gar
a broad moor has it wholly

umbevangen und ein sê.
surrounded and a lake.

ichn kom dar in nimmer mê
I came there in never more

sît mîn vrouwe vertriben wart.
since my lady driven-out became.

ouch gêt dar in dehein vart
also goes there in no way

niwan en zwein enden;
except at two ends;

die sint mit steinwenden
they are with rock-walls

beslozzen und mit huote,
closed and with guard,

sô daz des iemen muote
so that of-that anyone desired

daz er dar in kêre
that he there in turned

er engelte sîn vil sêre,
he should-pay-for of-it very sorely,

ezn volge̥ einer dem tiere dar
unless-it followed one the beast thither

der nâch der âventiure var:
who after the adventure fare:

den leitez âne schade̥n dar in.
him leads-it without harm there in.

der teile ouch danne den gewin
he share also then the prize

mit swelhem vriunde er welle!
with whichever friend he will!

ich wil sîn geselle
I will his companion

nimmer werden, swiez mir ergê; 4340
never become, however-it to-me goes;

ichn weiz et wiez dar umbe stê:
I-not know just how-it there about stands:

wirn gesehẹn ir dẹheinen nimmer mê.'
we see of-them any never more.'

'Der al die werlt geschaffen hât,
'He-who all the world created has,

der gebẹ mir helfe unde rât
he give me help and counsel

und trôst ze mîner reise, 4345
and comfort to my journey,

wand ich die selben vreise
for I the same peril

mir ze vreuden hân erwelt,'
for-me as joy have chosen,'

sô sprach her Gwîgâlois der helt;
so spoke lord Gwigalois the hero;

'ez wirt mir ein vil süeziu nôt
'it becomes to-me a very sweet distress

und sol ich durch si ligen tôt 4350
and (if)-shall I for her lie dead

die ich ze vrouwen hân erkorn;
whom I as lady have chosen;

ich muoz und wil ir sîn geborn
I must and will to-her be born

ze dienest swar ich kêre!'
for service whither I turn!'

der rede enwart niht mêre,
of-the speech became no more,

wand im was ruowe harte nôt; 4355
for to-him was rest very needful;

guot naht er in dô bôt.
good night he to-them then offered.

sus ruowet er unz an den tac.
thus rested he until to the day.

sîns rosses man mit vlîze pflac;
of-his horse one with diligence took-care;

ez wart dâ harte wol beslagen.
it became there very well shod.

sîn îsengwant daz hiez man tragen
his iron-clothing it bade one carry

balde in ein vegevaz;
quickly into a scouring-barrel;

mit solhem vlîze vegt man daz
with such diligence scoured one that

ez wart lûter als ein îs.
it became bright as an ice.

si vürderṭen in en mangen wîs
they furthered him in many ways

zer ängestlîchen reise.
for-the fearful journey.

sîn muot in in die vreise
his mind him into the peril

und in solhen kumber stiez
and into such grief thrust

dar zuo im niemen trôst gehiez;
there to him no-one comfort promised;

an gotes gnâde erz allez liez.
to God's grace he-it all left.

Des morgens dô der tac ûf gie,
Of-the morning when the day up went,

sîn sorge in niht slâfen lie
his care him not sleep let

und der jâmer nâch der maget.
and the grief after the maiden.

sîn herze was vil unverzaget;
his heart was very undaunted;

des gnôz er an vil manger stat.
of-that enjoyed he in very many-a place.

eine messe er im dô singen bat
a mass he for-himself then sing begged

von dem hêren geiste
of the holy ghost

und bat got aller meiste
and begged God of-all most

siges durch die reinen maget,
for-victory for the pure maiden,

wand im vür wâr was gesaget
for to-him for true was told

ob er den sic genæme dâ,
if he the victory should-take there,

man gæbe im mit stæte sâ
one would-give him with steadfastness at-once

die schœnen magt ze wîbe,
the beautiful maiden as wife,

ze vreuden sînem lîbe;
for joys to-his body;

des vreute sich der küene man.
of-that rejoiced himself the bold man.

dô daz ambet wart getân
when the office became done

und sich der pfaffe engarte,
and himself the priest ungirded,

dô stuont er unde warte
then stood he and waited

wen er im gæbe den segen,
when he to-him should-give the blessing,

als wir zer nœte hiute pflegen.
as we in-the need today practice.

der priester kom vil schiere wider;
the priest came very quickly back;

mit grôzem jâmer kniete er nider
with great grief knelt he down

vür den alter mit gebet.
before the altar with prayer.

eine kefsen nam er an der stet,
a reliquary took he in the place,

diu was heilctuomes vol;
which was of-relics full;

mit rôtem golde was si wol
with red gold was it well

gezieret und mit gesteine;
adorned and with gems;

von wîzem helfenbeine
of white ivory

was der kefsen daz ander teil.
was of-the reliquary the other part.

der priester was gar âne meil
the priest was wholly without stain

und ledic aller bôsheit;
and free of-all wickedness;

sîn hâr was grâ unde reit,
his hair was gray and curly,

sîn bart lanc unde breit;
his beard long and broad;

mit rîcher wât was er gekleit:
with rich clothing was he clad:

sîn pelz der was lûter grâ,
his fur it was pure gray,

mit einem samît der was blâ
with a samite which was blue

bezogen [vil] meisterlîche,
covered [very] masterfully,

gevidert was er rîche
lined was it richly

mit einem zobel spanne breit;
with a sable a-span broad;

der priester hêt an sich geleit
the priest had on himself laid

einen mantel der was luhsîn;
a mantle which was of-lynx;

der slaht moht er niht bezzer sîn,
of-the kind might it not better be,

mit einem siglât bedaht.
with a ciclatoun covered.

die liute liezen alle ir braht
the people left all their noise

und neicte sich der junge degen.
and bowed himself the young thane.

der priester gap im dô den segen
the priest gave him then the blessing

als er beste kunde:
as he best could:

mit kefsen und mit munde
with reliquary and with mouth

segent er in in den tôt.
blessed he him into the death.

dâ wart vil manic ouge rôt
there became very many-a eye red

dô im der segen wart gegeben.
when to-him the blessing became given.

'herre got, vrist im sîn leben
'lord God, preserve to-him his life

und gip im sige unde kraft
and give him victory and strength

zer ängestlîchen rîterschaft
for-the fearful knighthood

und behalte im sînen jungen lîp'
and keep to-him his young body'

sprach dâ man unde wîp,
spoke there man and woman,

'wand er ist alles guotes wert.'
'for he is of-all good worth.'

der priester strihte im umb sîn swert
the priest fastened to-him about his sword

einen brief, der gap im vesten muot:
a letter, which gave him firm spirit:

vür älliu zouber was er guot.
against all magic was it good.

des gnâter ịm und bevalch sich got.
for-that thanked-he him and commended himself to-God.

dar nâch schiere kom ein bot,
there after quickly came a messenger,

der hiez in enbîzen gân.
who bade him to-breakfast go.

der imbiz wart vil schiere getân;
the breakfast became very quickly done;

ringiu spîsẹ was im bereit
light food was to-him ready

ze sîner grôzen arbeit.
for his great toil.

von dem tische gienc er zehant
from the table went he at-once

dâ er die vrouwen alle vant
where he the ladies all found

und nam urloup von in sâ.
and took leave from them at-once.

sîn vestez herze liez er dâ
his firm heart left he there

bî der mägde wol getân;
by the maiden well made;

ir krankez herze vuorte er dan.
her weak heart carried he away.

nu sprechet wie sîn werde rât
now speak how of-him become counsel

der ein krankez herze hât
who a weak heart has

als er ze strîte rîten sol?
when he to fight ride shall?

dâ tuot im der gedinge wol
there does him the hope well

und der muot den im gît
and the spirit which to-him gives

diu süeze minne zaller zît;
the sweet love at-all time;

ditz allez reizte in ûf den strît.
this all incited him toward the fight.

Hie neic er dem gesinde
Here bowed he to-the household

von kinde ze kinde,
from child to child,

von manne ze manne;
from man to man;

dem rîter volget danne
the knight followed then

ein segen meiniclîche:
a blessing in-common:

si bâten alle gelîche
they begged all alike

got daz er sîn gedæhte
God that he of-him should-think

und in wider bræhte
and him back should-bring

mit sige und mit gesunde.
with victory and with health.

got enwoldẹ sô mangem munde
God would to-so many-a mouth

sîne gnâde niht versagen:
his grace not refuse:

er liez in an der vart bejagen
he let him on the journey win

solhen prîs der in noch wert;
such prize which him yet lasts;

des hêt der rîter ie gegert.
of-that had the knight ever desired.

man brâhte im sîn ors zehant,
one brought him his steed at-once,

sper, schilt und îsengwant;
spear, shield and iron-clothing;

dô wâfent sich der junge degen.
then armed himself the young thane.

des lîbes hêt er sich bewegen.
of-the body had he himself resigned.

vrouwe Lârîe sande im dô
lady Larie sent him then

eine gâbe, der wart er harte vrô:
a gift, of-which became he very glad:

ez was ein tasche pfellîn;
it was a pouch of-brocade;

ein brôt daz was geleit dar în,
a bread that was laid there in,

geworht mit grôzer meisterschaft:
wrought with great mastery:

von wurzen hêt ez solhe kraft
from herbs had it such power

daz in lie diu hungers nôt
that him left the hunger's distress

als erz engegẹn dem munde bôt;
when he-it toward the mouth offered;

ez gap im muot und solhe maht:
it gave him spirit and such might:

er wære gewesen siben naht
he would-have been seven nights

in einem walde âne maz
in a forest without food

als er sîn ein lützel gaz;
when he of-it a little ate;

des gnâter ir wol tûsent stunt.
for-that thanked-he her well thousand times.

nu kom ein bot, der tet im kunt,
now came a messenger, who made to-him known,

als erz ouch ê hêt vernomen,
as he-it also before had heard,

daz tier wær vür die burc komen
the beast were before the castle come

und gienge gegẹn dem walde.
and went toward the forest.

danne kêrte er balde
thence turned he quickly

mit jâmer vür daz bürgetor;
with grief before the castle-gate;

dâ sach er daz tier vor
there saw he the beast before

gegẹn dem walde kêren;
toward the forest turn;

sîne reise begunde er mêren
his journey began he to-increase

wand im was zuo dem tiere gâch.
for to-him was to the beast hasty.

daz gesinde segènt im nâch
the household blessed him after

und antwurt in in gotes pflege.
and delivered him into God's care.

her Gwîgâlois kêrt von dem wege
lord Gwigalois turned from the way

ein engez pfat, daz was niht breit,
a narrow path, which was not broad,

unz er daz schœne tier erreit.
until he the beautiful beast overtook.

als er im sô nâhen kam
when he to-it so near came

daz ez sîn rehte war genam,
that it of-him rightly heed took,

dô spiltez gegẹn im als ein hunt;
then played-it toward him as a dog;

mit sînem spil tet ez im kunt
with its play made it to-him known

daz er im willekomen was;
that he to-it welcome was;

ez legt sich vür in ûf daz gras
it laid itself before him onto the grass

und gnâte im sîner künfte dar.
and thanked him for-his coming there.

des wart er an im wol gewar,
of-that became he in it well aware,

wand ez vil güetlîche tet.
for it very kindly did.

nâch im kêrte er von der stet
after it turned he from the place

ein pfat, daz was vil enge;
a path, which was very narrow;

durch michel gedrenge
through great thicket

reit er in kurzer wîle
rode he in short while

baz danne zwelf mîle;
more than twelve miles;

sus vuoren si mit île.
thus fared they with haste.

Hie hêt der walt ein ende;
Here had the forest an end;

bî einer steinwende
by a rock-wall

kômen sị vür daz bürgetor;
came they before the castle-gate;

dâ lâgen wilde graben vor;
there lay wild ditches before;

die wâren sô vreislîche tief,
they were so fearfully deep,

als ein man dar în rief,
when a man there in called,

daz ez vil kûmẹ ḥer ûf hal;
that it very scarcely hither up echoed;

dâ wârẹn pfîlære hin ze tal
there were pillars thither to dale

geworht mit grôzer krefte,
wrought with great strength,

dar ûf mit meisterschefte
there upon with mastery

ein brücke was geslihtet,
a bridge was leveled,

ein slegetor [was] gerihtet
a portcullis [was] erected

von den pfîlærẹn enbor;
from the pillars aloft;

dâ was geheftet an daz tor.
there was fastened on the gate.

als daz tier zuo gie,
when the beast to went,

der portenære ez sîgen lie
the gatekeeper it sink let

und haftez ûf die brücke nider.
and fastened-it upon the bridge down.

in sîn hûs gienc er wider:
into his house went he back:

er erkande sînen blâst wol;
he knew its breath well;

sô grôzer hitze was ez vol,
of-so great heat was it full,

an swaz ez in der werlte blies,
on whatever it in the world blew,

daz bran zehant als ein mies,
that burned at-once as a moss,

steine und îsen als ein strô.
stones and iron as a straw.

nâch dem tiere reit er dô
after the beast rode he then

ze Korntîn in daz lant;
to Korntin into the land;

daz was eben als ein hant,
that was level as a hand,

wol gebûwen über al;
well cultivated over all;

dâ lac ûf und zetal
there lay up and down

wînwähse harte vil.
vineyards very many.

dô sach er sîner ougen spil
then saw he his eyes' play

vor im: einen turnei;
before him: a tournament;

dâ wart vil manic sper enzwei
there became very many-a spear in-two

in kurzer wîle gestochen,
in short while stabbed,

die starken schiltę zebrochen
the strong shields broken

von slegen und von stichen;
from blows and from stabs;

si jagten und entwichen
they hunted and gave-way

ze rehte als si solden;
to right as they should;

daz wart dâ wol vergolden
that became there well repaid

beidiu mit stichen und mit slegen;
both with stabs and with blows;

enzwischen zwein breiten wegen
between two broad ways

was diu storîe;
was the melee;

hundert unde drîe
hundred and three

was der rîter und niht mê;
were of-the knights and not more;

man hôrtę dâ niwan 'wê! wê!'
one heard there nothing-but 'woe! woe!'

vor in kreigieren dâ.
before them cry-out there.

her Gwîgâlois bedâhtę sich sâ
lord Gwigalois bethought himself at-once

ezn wæren rehte liute niht;
they were right people not;

ir rîterschaft dûht in enwiht
their knighthood seemed to-him naught

und nam ir aller wâfen war;
and took of-their all arms heed;

daz was in einer varwe gar,
that was in one color wholly,

rehte swarz alsam ein kol;
right black as a coal;

mit zinober wâren wol
with cinnabar were well

rôtiu viur gemâlet drin.
red fires painted there-in.

in twanc sîn manheit und sîn sin
him compelled his manhood and his mind

daz er sîn sper an der stet
that he his spear in the place

mit einer rîchen jost vertet
with a rich joust spent

durch sîne liebe âmîen,
for his dear beloved,

die schœnen Lârîen.
the beautiful Larie.

‘zevalier!’ begunder schrîen.
‘chevalier!’ began-he to-cry.

His lance burns away on the wretched troop of knights. On a meadow before Korntin the beast becomes a crowned man: the soul of Larie's father, doing penance for ten years. He tells of the knights slain with him by Roaz, now riding in hell's fire, and of the dragon, whose slayer will win Larie and the land; he gives Gwigalois a blossom against its stench, tells him of the lance that alone can kill it, and reveals that his father is Gawein. Then he says it is time for him to burn.

Dô er daz sper hêt vertân,
When he the spear had spent,

beidiu schaft und îsen bran
both shaft and iron burned

swâ ez an si ruorte;
wherever it on them touched;

sîn ors in danne vuorte
his steed him thence carried

baz danne rehte reise.
more than right pace.

ern kom in solhe vreise
he came into such peril

von sô grôzer hitze nie.
from so great heat never.

er gedâhte 'herre got, wie
he thought 'lord God, how

stêt ez umḅ dise rîterschaft
stands it about this knighthood

daz beidiu îsen unde schaft
that both iron and shaft

an in sô gar ist verbrant?
on them so wholly is burned?

und wær mir doch daz nû erkant
and were to-me yet that now known

wes gesinde ez wære,
whose household it were,

sô vrâgẹt ich si der mære
so would-ask I them for-the tidings

unz ich ervüere ir leben gar.'
until I found-out their life wholly.'

von der jæmerlîchen schar
from the wretched troop

kêrtẹ der edel rîter dô;
turned the noble knight then;

ir valschiu vreude tet ịn unvrô,
their false joy made him unglad,

wand er wol sach daz in daz leben
for he well saw that to-them the life

got ze buoze hêt gegeben.
God as penance had given.

von den rîtern wart im gâch;
from the knights became to-him hasty;

dem tiere kêrte er aber nâch
the beast turned he again after

vür daz hûs ze Korntîn.
before the house at Korntin.

an des gezierde was wol schîn
in its adornment was well seen

daz daz lant rîche was;
that the land rich was;

diu mûre glaste alsam ein glas
the wall gleamed as a glass

lûter unde reine,
clear and pure,

von edelm märmelsteine
of noble marble

geworht vil meisterlîche;
wrought very masterfully;

ein palas harte rîche
a palace very rich

lac enmitten drinne
lay in-the-middle there-in

gemûrt mit grôzem sinne
walled with great wit

von lûtern kristallen —
of clear crystals—

daz muose im wol gevallen, —
that must him well please,—

mit vlîze gewelbet âne dach;
with diligence vaulted without roof;

durch die mûre man wol sach
through the wall one well saw

allez daz dar inne was,
all that there in was,

wan si was lûter als ein glas;
for it was clear as a glass;

daz hûs was erbûwen wol
the house was built well

und maniger gezierde vol.
and of-many-a adornment full.

ouch lac ein anger vor dem tor
also lay a meadow before the gate

ûf einem breiten steine enbor
upon a broad stone aloft

nâhen bî der strâze;
near by the road;

schône âne mâze
beautiful without measure

ein boum dar ûf gebelzet was
a tree there upon grafted was

rehte enmitten in daz gras,
right in-the-middle in the grass,

des schat den anger gar bevie;
whose shade the meadow wholly caught;

von sînem süezen bluote gie
from its sweet bloom went

ein smac reine unde guot;
a scent pure and good;

der gap kraft und guoten muot.
it gave strength and good spirit.

dar engegen daz tier kêrte,
there toward the beast turned,

als ez diu gwonheit lêrte,
as it the custom taught,

dâ der schœne anger lac.
where the beautiful meadow lay.

nimmer wart dehein tac
never became any day

ezn kœme dar zer selben stunt;
unless-it came thither at-the same hour;

sîn süezer smac was im wol kunt.
its sweet scent was to-it well known.

ûf den anger spranc ez sâ;
onto the meadow sprang it at-once;

daz tier wart verwandelt dâ
the beast became transformed there

zehant von sîner wilde
at-once from its wildness

in eines mannes bilde;
into a man's image;

der hêt zöpfe alsam ein wîp;
he had braids as a woman;

beidiu sîn wât und sîn lîp
both his clothing and his body

diu wâren lieht sunnen var,
they were bright sun colored,

lûter und sô rehte klâr
clear and so right bright

daz ez im in diu ougen schein
that it to-him into the eyes shone

als ein lieht karfunkelstein;
as a bright carbuncle-stone;

sîn houbet daz was schône
his head it was beautifully

gezieret mit der krône
adorned with the crown

die daz tier hêt dar getragen.
which the beast had there borne.

her Gwîgâlois bi sînen tagen
lord Gwigalois by his days

sô vremdes nie niht gesach.
so strange never anything saw.

des erkom er sêre unde sprach
of-that took-fright he sorely and spoke

'herre got, waz sol daz sîn?'
'lord God, what shall that be?'

zuo dem man wold er dar în
to the man would he there in

erbeizet sîn sâ zehant;
dismounted be straightway at-once;

dô was der anger âne want
then was the meadow without wall

beslozzén mit gotes tougen;
closed with God's secret;

swie in doch sîniu ougen
however him yet his eyes

vor im offen sâhen,
before him open saw,

ern mohte niht genâhen
he might not near

dem manne den er bî im sach.
the man whom he by him saw.

daz muote in sêre unde sprach
that vexed him sorely and spoke

'sag an, sît du mensche bist,
'say on, since thou human art,

ob du geloubest an Krist
whether thou believest in Christ

und wiez umḅ dîn leben stê;
and how-it about thy life stands;

dir ist nû wol, ê wạs dir wê.
to-thee is now well, before was to-thee woe.

als ich mich versinnen kan,
as I myself understand can,

got hât wundẹr an dir getân:
God has wonder on thee done:

ê wærd ein tier, nû bist ein man.'
before wert-thou a beast, now art a man.'

Er sprach 'den du mir hâst genant,
He spoke 'him-whom thou to-me hast named,

der sol mir immer sîn bekant
he shall to-me ever be known

und geloube daz er wârre Krist
and believe that he true Christ

ie was und immer ist,
ever was and ever is,

daz âne in niht genesen mac;
that without him nothing survive may;

ich hân verdienet sînen slac
I have earned his blow

leider mir und sînen zorn;
alas for-me and his anger;

des bin ich armiu sêle verlorn
of-that am I poor soul lost

ern welle mir genædic wesen:
unless-he will to-me gracious be:

âne in trûwe ich niht genesen.
without him trust I not to-survive.

ditz ist mîn ruowe die ich hân,
this is my rest which I have,

als ich von den wîzen gân
when I from the torments go

des tages ie ze dirre stunt;
of-the day ever at this hour;

niht mê ruowe ist mir kunt
not more rest is to-me known

als ich dich nû bewîse:
as I thee now show:

zeinem paradîse
as-a paradise

gap mir got ditz ze lône hie;
gave me God this as reward here;

daz verdienet ich, ich sage dir wie:
that earned I, I tell thee how:

ich was herre über ditze lant
I was lord over this land

unde stuont gar in mîner hant
and stood wholly in my hand

beidiu liute unde guot;
both people and goods;

dô gap mir got sô guoten muot
then gave me God so good mind

daz ich die armẹn an dise stat
that I the poor to this place

zallen zîten komen bat;
at-all times come bade;

ich teilte in selbẹ mit mîner hant,
I shared to-them self with my hand,

swaz ich armer liute vant;
whatever I of-poor people found;

die beriet ich mit der spîse.
them provided I with the food.

ditz selbe paradîse
this same paradise

gap mir got ze lône
gave me God as reward

und dise liehte krône
and this bright crown

die ich hie mit vreuden trage.
which I here with joys bear.

du solt merken waz ich dir sage.'
thou shalt mark what I to-thee say.'

'daz tuon ich gerne' sprach der degen.
'that do I gladly' spoke the thane.

er sprach 'ez ist hie bî gelegen
he spoke 'there is here by lain

ein wurm nû wol zehen jâr;
a serpent now well ten years;

der hât ditze lant gar
it has this land wholly

verwüest unz an daz wilde mos;
laid-waste until to the wild moor;

beidiu man unde ros
both men and horses

treit er hin âne wer;
carries it thither without defense;

von sînem stankè verdürbe ein her
from its stench would-perish a host

der im ûz dem halse gêt;
which to-it out-of the throat goes;

und wizze et daz, wer in bestêt,
and know just that, whoever it withstands,

der hât den tôt an der hant.
he has the death at the hand.

nu hât dich got her gesant
now has thee God hither sent

daz du uns erledigen solt;
that thou us free shalt;

dâ mit erwirbestu den solt
there with winnest-thou the pay

des du immer vrô maht sîn:
of-which thou ever glad mayst be:

Lârîen, die tohter mîn,
Larie, the daughter mine,

dar zuo ditz lant ze Korntîn.
there to this land at Korntin.

Ouch wil ich dir sagen mê:
Also will I to-thee tell more:

diu rîterschaft die du ê
the knighthood which thou before

sæhe bî der strâze;
sawest by the road;

der wîze ist âne mâze
the torment is beyond measure

grôz und sô jæmerlîch
great and so wretched

daz ir nœte ist niht gelîch;
that to-their distress is nothing alike;

swie vrœlîch si dâ rîten,
however joyfully they there ride,

si sint doch zallen zîten
they are yet at-all times

in der helle viure;
in the hell's fire;

ruowe ist in tiure;
rest is to-them scarce;

daz tuot mir wê und muoz ez klagen:
that does me woe and must it lament:

si wurden alle [bî] mir erslagen
they became all [by] me slain

dô mir der ungetriuwe man
when from-me the faithless man

an guoten triuwen an gewan
in good faith on won

mînen lîp und ditze lant.
my body and this land.

Rôaz von Glois ist er genant;
Roaz of Glois is he named;

ez ist manic zierre degen
there is many-a fine thane

von sîner hant hie tôt gelegen
from his hand here dead lain

die nâch der âventiure riten;
who after the adventure rode;

si habent hie alsô gestriten
they have here so fought

daz si ir êre gar verlurn
that they their honor wholly lost

und ouch den tôt von im kurn.
and also the death from him chose.

sîn hûs daz lît hie nâhen bî.
his house it lies here near by.

und wizze iedoch, swie küene er sî,
and know yet, however bold he be,

ern getorste dẹn wurm nie bestân,
he dared the serpent never withstand,

swie er im doch habe getân
however it to-him yet have done

solhen schaden mangen tac
such harm many-a day

den er niht überwinden mac
which he not overcome may

an sînen liuten die er hât.'
in his people which he has.'

der rîter sprach 'nu gip mir rât
the knight spoke 'now give me counsel

durch die gotes güete
for the God's goodness

wie ich mich behüete
how I myself guard

vor des wurmes stanke,
from the serpent's stench,

daz ich dirs immer danke,
that I thee-it ever thank,

die wîl ich lebè, mit mîm gebet.'
the while I live, with my prayer.'

der schœne man brach an der stet
the beautiful man broke in the place

von dem boume einen bluot.
from the tree a blossom.

er sprach 'nu nim! ditz ist dir guot,
he spoke 'now take! this is to-thee good,

daz dir dehein bœser smac
that to-thee no wicked smell

von sîner süeze geschaden mac,
from its sweetness harm may,

und rît vür daz bürgetor;
and ride before the castle-gate;

dâ stecket ein glävîe vor,
there sticks a lance before,

die brâhte mir ein engel her;
it brought me an angel hither;

niht ist daz dâ vor gewer,
nothing is that there before holds,

horn, stein noch îsengwant,
horn, stone nor iron-clothing,

man stechẹ dâ durch unz an die hant.
unless-one stab there through until to the hand.

si wart genomẹn, ich sagẹ dir wâ:
it became taken, I tell thee where:

in der innern Indîâ
in the inner India

dâ ist einer slahte stâl
there is of-a kind steel

daz hât von golde rôtiu mâl
which has of gold red marks

und ist sô herte daz ẹz den stein
and is so hard that it the stone

rehte snîdet als ein zein.
right cuts as a rod.

si stecket in der steinwant.
it sticks in the rock-wall.

nu nim si, helt, in dîne hant
now take it, hero, into thy hand

und rît ûf die heide;
and ride onto the heath;

er ist an sîner weide
it is at its pasture

als der âbent ane gêt;
when the evening on goes;

swaz lentiges dan dâ bestêt,
whatever living then there stays,

liute od vihe, daz treit er hin;
people or cattle, that carries it thither;

ze vlühte habe niemen sin,
for flight have no-one mind,

wand er erloufet, swenne er wil,
for it outruns, whenever it will,

daz wilde tier als er spil.
the wild beast as-if it play.

man enmac in niht gesêren
one may it not wound

mit geschozze noch mit gêren;
with shot nor with javelin;

ouch ist dehein gesmîde
also is no smithwork

daz den wurm snîde
which the serpent cuts

wan diu glävîe eine;
except the lance alone;

in einem holen steine
in a hollow stone

ist er gelegen mangen tac,
is it lain many-a day,

dâ in niht gewinnen mac.
where it nothing win may.

du erslehst den wurm, daz ist wâr;
thou slayest the serpent, that is true;

du verliusest ab von im sô gar
thou losest but from it so wholly

dîne kraft daz dir nie mê
thy strength that to-thee never more

von deheinem strîte geschach sô wê;
from any fight happened so woe;

die nôt soltu bedenken ê.'
the distress shalt-thou consider before.'

Her Gwîgâlois mit vreuden sprach
Lord Gwigalois with joys spoke

'wol mich, daz ez mir ie geschach
'well for-me, that it to-me ever happened

daz ich die magt ervehten sol!
that I the maiden win-by-fighting shall!

ez tuot mir herzenlîche wol
it does me heartily well

daz ich hie strîtes vinde stat.'
that I here of-strife find place.'

'jâ, benamẹn, du wirst sîn sat!'
'yes, assuredly, thou becomest of-it sated!'

sprach der wundern schœne man.
spoke the wondrously beautiful man.

'nâch dînem willen muoz ergân
'after thy will must go

allez des dîn herze gert;
all that thy heart desires;

des bistu weizgot wol wert;
of-that art-thou God-knows well worth;

du solt von rehte sîn ein helt,
thou shalt by right be a hero,

wan dîn vater ist erwelt,
for thy father is chosen,

der süeze her Gâwein,
the sweet lord Gawein,

zuo dem besten rîter ein
to the best knights one

den diu sunne ie beschein.'
whom the sun ever shone-on.'

Der junge rîtęr aber dô sprach
The young knight again then spoke

'du erkennest den ich nie gesach.'
'thou knowest him-whom I never saw.'

'zwâre, du hâst!' er sprach 'nein.'
'truly, thou hast!' he spoke 'no.'

'ez ist der selbe Gâwein
'it is the same Gawein

dem der künic Artûs
to-whom the king Arthur

ze Karidôl in sînem hûs
at Karidol in his house

sîn êre gar bevolhen hât,
his honor wholly commended has,

an dem der hof aller stât.'
on whom the court all stands.'

'sô dir got, ist ez wâr?'
'so-help thee God, is it true?'

'[zwâr,] ichn liuge dir niht umb ein hâr.'
'[truly,] I lie to-thee not by a hair.'

'her Gâwein wart er mir genant;
'lord Gawein became he to-me named;

mir was ab daz unbekant
to-me was but that unknown

ob ér mîn vater wære;
whether he my father were;

nu vreuwe ich mich der mære
now rejoice I myself of-the tidings

daz mir von sîner vrümicheit
that to-me of his valor

sô mangen enden ist geseit;
so many ends is told;

ouch hân ichz selbe wol gesehen.'
also have I-it self well seen.'

'sælde und êre müez dir geschehen!'
'blessedness and honor must to-thee happen!'

sô sprach diu sêle 'nu gêt mir zuo
so spoke the soul 'now goes to-me to

diu zît daz ich unz morgen vruo
the time that I until morning early

in dem hûse brinnen sol;
in the house burn shall;

dar nâch ist mir immer wol.
there after is to-me ever well.

ich hân gebüezet zehen jâr;
I have atoned ten years;

dar nâch bin ich ledic gar
there after am I free wholly

mîner sünden die ich ie getet.
of-my sins which I ever did.

du solt, helt, mit dîm gebet
thou shalt, hero, with thy prayer

gedenken der vil armen schar
think of-the very poor troop

diu vor mir in daz hûs var,
which before me into the house fare,

wan diu ist leider unerlôst;
for it is alas unredeemed;

du bist ir helfe und ir trôst;
thou art their help and their comfort;

als ich dir ê hân gesaget,
as I to-thee before have told,

dir wirt daz lant und diu maget,
to-thee becomes the land and the maiden,

dar zuo rîche dienstman,
there to rich ministerials,

wan du gesigèst dem heiden an
for thou conquerest the heathen on

des leit ich ie mit leide truoc;
whose sorrow I ever with sorrow bore;

an guoten triuwen er mich sluoc;
in good faith he me slew;

durch daz ich im mîn dienest bôt,
for that I to-him my service offered,

dâ von kom ich in dise nôt;
there from came I into this distress;

des lît mîn armer lîp nu tôt.'
of-that lies my poor body now dead.'

XVII · PFETAN

Taking the lance, Gwigalois finds a lady lamenting her husband, whom the dragon Pfetan has carried off with three companions. He eats of Larie's bread, sees the monstrous dragon, and drives the lance through its heart. In its death throes the dragon crushes him and his armor and flings him down the slope, where he lies senseless by the lake.

Dô si die rede vol sprach,
When she the speech fully spoke,

her Gwîgâlois dô rîten sach
lord Gwigalois then ride saw

vür sich dâ, des nam er war,
before himself there, of-that took he heed,

die vil jæmerlîchen schar
the very wretched troop

4840 ûf den er sîn sper vertet;
on whom he his spear spent;

si erbeizten alle an der stet
they dismounted all in the place

dô si zem anger kâmen;
when they to-the meadow came;

ir sper si alle nâmen
their spears they all took

ûf ir ahsel und zugen hin,
upon their shoulder and drew thither,

4845 einer nâch dem andern, in
one after the other, in

durch daz schœne bürgetor.
through the beautiful castle-gate.

her Gwîgâlois der nam dâ vor
lord Gwigalois he took there before

die glävîẹn in sîne hant;
the lance into his hand;

diu stahte in der steinwant
it stuck in the rock-wall

4850 als in einer tanne.
as-if in a fir.

'rîter, hebt iuch danne!'
'knight, raise yourself then!'

sprach der ûf dem anger saz.
spoke he-who upon the meadow sat.

'unser herre got gebe iu daz
'our lord God give you that

ir den sic erwerbet hie!'
you the victory win here!'

von dem anger er dô gie
from the meadow he then went

in tieres wîs, alsam ê;
in beast's manner, as before;

sîner rede enwart niht mê;
of-his speech became no more;

sus gienc ez in das hûs dan;
thus went it into the house away;

von sînem blâste ez dô bran
from its breath it then burned

daz man ez harte wîten sach,
that one it very widely saw,

daz sît nimmer mê geschach,
which afterward never more happened,

wan got hêt sînen zorn verlân.
for God had his anger let-go.

der junge rîter huop sich dan
the young knight raised himself away

mit grôzem herzeleide
with great heart-sorrow

über die wilden heide.
over the wild heath.

diu liehte sunne under gie.
the bright sun under went.

einen stîc her Gwîgâlois gevie,
a path lord Gwigalois took,

der truoc in hin zuo einem sê,
it carried him thither to a lake,

dâ vil jæmerlîche schrê
where very wretchedly cried

ein schœne wîp nâch wîbes sit;
a beautiful woman after woman's custom;

dâ si ir leit erzeiget mit.
there she her sorrow showed with.

dar begundẹ der rîter gâhen.
thither began the knight to-hasten.

dô er ir kom sô nâhen
when he to-her came so near

daz er ir ungebærde ersach,
that he her wild-bearing saw,

daz beswârte in sêre unde sprach
that burdened him sorely and spoke

'owê, ir vil sælic wîp,
'alas, you very blessed woman,

warumbe quelt ir iuwern lîp,
why torment you your body,

waz leides ist iu hie geschehen?'
what of-sorrow is to-you here happened?'

er mohte vil wol an ir sehen
he might very well in her see

daz ir von herzen leide was;
that to-her from heart sorrowful was;

si was gevallen ûf daz gras
she was fallen onto the grass

mit gezartem gebende;
with torn headdress;

ir vil wîze hende
her very white hands

brach si und ir rîch gewant;
wrung she and her rich clothing;

in solhem jâmer er si vant
in such grief he her found

daz ez in muose erbarmen:
that it him must pity:

mit nackenden armen,
with naked arms,

mit zevuortem hâre;
with disheveled hair;

ez was ir lîp ze wâre,
it was her body in truth,

swâ er blahte, alsam ein snê;
wherever it showed-bare, as a snow;

ir grôziu klage tet im wê;
her great lament did him woe;

daz erzeigęt er sît mit werken wol.
that showed he afterward with works well.

ir brust was swarz alsam ein kol,
her breast was black as a coal,

daz bluot dạrunder geloufen;
the blood there-under run;

mit slegen und mit roufen
with blows and with tearing

hêt si ir lîp verderbet
had she her body ruined

und vil nâch gar ersterbet.
and very nearly wholly killed.

sus lac diu vrouwe âne maht,
thus lay the lady without might,

der liehte tac was ir ein naht,
the bright day was to-her a night,

sîne gehôrte noch gesach;
she-not heard nor saw;

von herzeleide ir daz geschach.
from heart-sorrow to-her that happened.

der rîter aber zuo ir sprach
the knight again to her spoke

‘Owê, vrouwe, wie tuot ir sô?
‘Alas, lady, why do you so?

gehabt iuch wol und sît vrô;
fare you well and be glad;

daz ir sælic müezet sîn!
that you blessed must be!

wand ich durch iuch den lîp mîn
for I for you the body mine

wâgen wil unz in den tôt,
risk will until into the death,

ob ich dâ mit iuwer nôt
if I there with your distress

erwenden mac und iuwer leit;
avert may and your sorrow;

liebiu vrouwe mîn, nu seit
dear lady mine, now tell

waz iu leides werre.'
what you of-sorrow troubles.'

diu vrouwe sach vil verre
the lady looked very far

ûf ze got unde sprach,
up to God and spoke,

dô si den rîter bî ir sach,
when she the knight by her saw,

'owê, lieber herre, owê!
'alas, dear lord, alas!

jâ muoz ich trûren immer mê;
indeed must I grieve ever more;

mîner klage gêt mir nôt.
of-my lament goes to-me need.

wolde got wan wære ich tôt,
would God that were I dead,

sô hêt mîn klage ein ende.
so would-have my lament an end.

herre got, nu sende
lord God, now send

mir den tôt, sît ich sîn bit!
me the death, since I for-it beg!

dâ hât mîn leit ein ende mit.
there has my sorrow an end with.

herre got, wie tuostu sô?
lord God, why doest-thou so?

von dînen gnâden was ich vrô:
from thy graces was I glad:

mir hêt zer werlte ein süezez leben
to-me had in-the world a sweet life

dîn reiniu gotheit gegeben;
thy pure godhead given;

des bin ich nû beroubet.
of-that am I now robbed.

mîn vreude diu ist betoubet
my joy it is stunned

von herzenlîchem leide!
from heartfelt sorrow!

herre got, nu scheide
lord God, now part

die sêle von mînem lîbe,
the soul from my body,

wan mir armen wîbe
for to-me poor woman

nimmer liep mac geschehen
never joy may happen

sît ich in tôten hân gesehen
since I him dead have seen

den ich ze vreuden hêt erkorn.
whom I for joys had chosen.

owê daz ich ie wart geborn!
alas that I ever became born!

wie jæmerlîche er ist verlorn!'
how wretchedly he is lost!'

Nâch der klage si sich sluoc.
After the lament she herself struck.

der rîter ir daz niht vertruoc;
the knight to-her that not endured;

er erbeizte von dem orse nider.
he dismounted from the steed down.

diu vrouwe begundẹ sich roufen wider,
the lady began herself to-tear again,

ir kleit zerren alsam ê.
her garment to-rend as before.

der rîter sprach 'desn wirt niht mê.'
the knight spoke 'of-that becomes no more.'

ir wîze hende er gevie;
her white hands he caught;

mit bet er si des übergie
with request he her of-that overcame

daz si im begunde sagen
that she to-him began to-tell

wie der wuṛm hêt hin getragen
how the serpent had thither carried

an der wîle ir lieben man.
in the while her dear husband.

si sprach 'herre, got hât getân
she spoke 'lord, God has done

an mir des ich in nie gebat:
to me what I him never begged:

wir wârn geriṭẹn an dise stat,
we were ridden to this place,

ich und mîn vriunt, mit vederspil;
I and my beloved, with hawks;

dô wart mir mîner vreuden zil
then became to-me my joys' goal

in kurzer wîle geslagen nider,
in short while struck down,

daz nimmer wirt gerihtet wider.
which never becomes set-right back.

daz tet der grôze wurm Pfetân,
that did the great serpent Pfetan,

der micheln schadẹn ḥie hât getân;
who great harm here has done;

er truoc in selbe vierden hin,
it carried him self fourth thither,

diu starken ors under in
the strong steeds under them

als ez ein niht wære.
as-if it a nothing were.

wie er mich verbære,
how it me should-spare,

des nimt mich michel wunder;
of-that takes me great wonder;

von mînem vriunt besunder
from my beloved apart

ich an daz velt beizen reit;
I to the field hawking rode;

dâ von der tôt mich vermeit.
there from the death me avoided.

daz sî dir, herre got, gekleit!'
that be to-thee, lord God, lamented!'

Der rîter sprach 'wâ kêrter hin?'
The knight spoke 'where turned-it away?'

si sprach 'herre, habt ir den sin
she spoke 'lord, have you the mind

daz ir in bestên welt?'
that you it withstand will?'

'jâ ich, gerne' sprach der helt.
'yes I, gladly' spoke the hero.

'owê, herre, sô sît ir tôt.'
'alas, lord, so are you dead.'

'waz darumbe? ich bin durch nôt
'what for-that? I am through need

von Britanje her gevarn.'
from Britain hither fared.'

‘herre, got müez iuch bewarn!’
‘lord, God may you guard!’

sprach daz vreudelôse wîp.
spoke the joyless woman.

‘ich weiz wol daz ir iuwern lîp
‘I know well that you your life

habt verlorn âne wer.’
have lost without defense.’

‘nu sî got der mich ner’
‘now be God he-who me saves’

sprach der rîter ‘swar ich var;
spoke the knight ‘whither I fare;

ich wil benamen nâch im dar
I will assuredly after it thither

dâ er iuwern vriunt hât,
where it your beloved has,

swie sîn dar nâch werde rât.’
however of-it there after become counsel.’

si sprach ‘herre, nu seht daz pfat
she spoke ‘lord, now see the path

daz er mit sînen vüezen trat,
which it with its feet trod,

und volget im vil rehte nâch;
and follow it very rightly after;

er gêt vil sanfte, im ist niht gâch,
it goes very gently, to-it is not hasty,

wand er ist ân angest gar.’
for it is without fear wholly.’

von der vrouwen kêrter dar
from the lady turned-he thither

nâch dem pfat, durch den walt;
after the path, through the forest;

sîn sorge was vil manicvalt.
his care was very manifold.

dô nam er ûz der taschen sîn
then took he out-of the pouch his

daz brôt und daz blüemelîn;
the bread and the little-flower;

des süeze gap im guoten muot:
its sweetness gave him good spirit:

vür übeln smac was ez guot.
against evil smell was it good.

ab dem brôte beiz er zehant;
from the bread bit he at-once;

sus warnet sich der wîgant
thus readied himself the fighter

zuo der ängestlîchen nôt;
for the fearful distress;

ez dûhte in ein vil reinez brôt,
it seemed to-him a very pure bread,

wand imz sîn vrouwe hêt gegeben
for to-him-it his lady had given

ze vristen an der nôt sîn leben;
to preserve in the distress his life;

ez gap im alsô grôze maht
it gave him so great might

daz er vrôlîche vaht.
that he joyfully fought.

ditz was vil nâhen bî der naht.
this was very near by the night.

Sus reit er einen berc zetal.
Thus rode he a mountain down.

dâ hôrte er mangen grôzen val
there heard he many-a great fall

von den starken esten;
of the strong branches;

die boume begunden bresten
the trees began to-break

dâ der wurm hin sleif;
where the serpent thither crept;

swaz er mit dem zagèl begreif,
whatever it with the tail gripped,

daz brach er allez nâch im nider;
that broke it all after it down;

sîner sterke was niht wider.
to-its strength was nothing against.

vil schiere sach der küene man
very quickly saw the bold man

den ungevüegen wurm Pfetân
the monstrous serpent Pfetan

vor im eislîche gên.
before him horribly go.

er gedâhte 'und sol ich dich bestên,
he thought 'and (if)-shall I thee withstand,

daz ist mir ein ängestlîchiu nôt! —
that is to-me a fearful distress!—

waz dar umbe, lige ich tôt?'
what there for, (if)-lie I dead?'

des hêt er sich vil schiere bewegen;
of-that had he himself very quickly resolved;

vür sich tet er den gotes segen
before himself made he the God's blessing

dô er den wurm rehte ersach;
when he the serpent rightly saw;

in sînem herzen er des jach
in his heart he of-that said

daz sô ungehiure
that so monstrous

deheine crêâtiure
any creature

ie gesæhe dehein man.
ever should-see any man.

ich sagiu wie er was getân,
I tell-you how it was made,

als er sît selbe jach
as he afterward self said

der in bescheidenlîche sach:
who it distinctly saw:

sîn houbt was âne mâze grôz,
its head was beyond measure great,

swarz, rûch; sîn snabel blôz,
black, rough; its beak bare,

eins klâfters lanc, wol ellen breit,
a fathom long, well ell broad,

vor gespitzet, unde sneit
in-front pointed, and cut

als ein niuwesliffen sper;
as a newly-whetted spear;

in sînem giele hêt er
in its gullet had it

lange zene als ein swîn;
long teeth as a swine;

breite schuopen hürnîn
broad scales of-horn

wâren an im über al;
were on it over all;

von dem houbet hin ze tal
from the head thither to dale

stuont ûf im ein scharfer grât,
stood upon it a sharp ridge,

als der kokodrille hât,
as the crocodile has,

dâ er die kiele kliubet mit;
where it the keels splits with;

der wurm hêt nâch wurmes sit
the serpent had after serpent's manner

einen zagel langen;
a tail long;

dâ mit hêt er bevangen
there with had it caught

vier rîter lussam,
four knights lovely,

die er vor dem walde nam,
whom it before the forest took,

als im diu vrouwe hêt geseit
as him the lady had told

durch die er nâch dem wurme reit.
for whom he after the serpent rode.

vil kûme hêten si ir leben;
very scarcely had they their life;

der zagel was umb si gegeben
the tail was about them laid

wol mit drin valten;
well with three folds;

sus hêt er si behalten,
thus had it them kept,

als er si ezzen wolde.
as-if it them eat would.

ern trûwẹt niht daz er solde
it trusted not that it should

sterben von deheinem man.
die by any man.

einen kamp hêt ẹr als ein han,
a comb had it as a cock,

wan daz er ungevüege was;
except that it monstrous was;

sîn bûch was grüene alsam ein gras,
its belly was green as a grass,

diu ougen rôt, sîn sîte gel;
the eyes red, its side yellow;

der wurm der was sinwel
the serpent it was round

als ein kerze hin zetal;
as a candle thither down;

sîn scharfer grât der was val;
its sharp ridge it was fallow;

zwei ôren hêt er als ein mûl;
two ears had it as a mule;

sîn âtem stanc, wand er was vûl,
its breath stank, for it was foul,

wirs dan ein âs daz lange zît
worse than a carcass which long time

an der heizen sunnen lît;
in the hot sun lies;

ouch hêt er vil unsüeze
also had it very unsweet

als ein grîfe vüeze,
as a griffin feet,

die wâren rûch als ein ber;
which were rough as a bear;

zwei schœniu vetichẹ ḥêt er
two beautiful wings had it

gelîch eins pfâwèn gevider;
like a peacock's feathers;

sîn hals was im vil nider
its neck was to-it very low

gebogen ûf daz grüene gras;
bent onto the green grass;

sîn drozze gar von knurren was,
its throat wholly of knobs was,

als ein steinbockes horn.
as an ibex's horn.

von im was manic lîp verlorn;
from it was many-a life lost;

ouch muos ér den tôt dâ korn.
also must it the death there choose.

Als er den wurm rehte ersach,
When he the serpent rightly saw,

dô blihter ûf unde sprach
then looked-he up and spoke

'nu hilf, keiser, herre got,
'now help, emperor, lord God,

daz mich dirre tievels bot
that me this devil's messenger

iht scheide von dem lîbe,
not part from the body,

daz ich dem süezen wîbe
that I for-the sweet woman

erledigẹ ir gesellen.
free her companion.

du solt den tievel vellen,
thou shalt the devil fell,

wand er der werlte schaden tuot.'
for he to-the world harm does.'

der segen gap im vesten muot
the blessing gave him firm spirit

zuo der ängestlîchen nôt.
for the fearful distress.

sus kêrtẹ der rîter in den tôt
thus turned the knight into the death

gegẹn dem wurme vreissam;
toward the serpent terrible;

mit beiden handen er dô nam
with both hands he then took

die glävîẹ, wan si was starc;
the lance, for it was strong;

dô truoc in sîn schœne marc
then carried him his beautiful horse

ûf den wurm dâ er gie;
upon the serpent where it went;

die glävîe er sîgen lie
the lance he sink let

daz sîn der wurm niht ensach;
that him the serpent not saw;

durch sîn herze er im stach
through its heart he to-it stabbed

den schaft unz an die hant gar
the shaft until to the hand wholly

ê er des mannes würde gewar:
before it of-the man became aware:

sô snellîche kom er dar.
so swiftly came he thither.

Als er des stiches dâ enpfant,
When it the stab there felt,

dô begunder lüewen sâ zehant
then began-it to-roar straightway at-once

daz der walt al erhal.
that the forest all resounded.

sich huop dâ manic grôzer val
itself raised there many-a great fall

von den starken esten;
of the strong branches;

die boume begunden bresten
the trees began to-break

dâ der wurm nâch im sluoc;
where the serpent after him struck;

sîn snellez ors in danne truoc.
his swift steed him thence carried.

die vier gesellen liez er dâ;
the four companions let it there;

nâch dem rîter kêrter sâ
after the knight turned-it at-once
und hêt in harte schiere ervarn;
and had him very quickly overtaken;
sîn kraft moht in des niht bewarn
his strength might him from-that not guard
ern zarte im abe ḍạz îsen;
unless-it tore from-him off the iron;
die ringe begunden rîsen
the rings began to-fall
als ez wære ein dürrez strô;
as-if it were a dry straw;
dem edeln rîter nam er dô
from-the noble knight took it then
sîne kraft und sînen sin;
his strength and his wits;
alsô töunde druhte er in
so dying pressed it him
daz im daz bluot zer nase dranc
that to-him the blood at-the nose pushed
und ouch zen ôren ûz spranc;
and also at-the ears out sprang;
sus warf er in als einen bal
thus threw it him as a ball
eine rise hin zetal;
a slope thither down;
dâ belac er bî dem breiten sê.
there lay he by the broad lake.
owê, jâmer und owê,
alas, grief and alas,
daz er sô jæmerlîche lac
that he so wretchedly lay
des herzẹ ie niwan tugent pflac!
whose heart ever only virtue practiced!

er hêt daz swert in sîner hant;
he had the sword in his hand;

beidiu schilt und îsengwant
both shield and iron-clothing

wâren an im zedrücket.
were on him crushed.

sîn leben hêt gezücket
his life had snatched

der tôt vil nâch mit jâmer hin:
the death very nearly with grief away:

âne maht und âne sin
without might and without wits

belac der rîter mit dem rade
lay the knight with the wheel

ûf des breiten sêwes stade.
upon the broad lake's shore.

ouch was der übel wurm tôt,
also was the evil serpent dead,

von dem daz lant grôze nôt
from which the land great distress

hêt gehabet mangen tac.
had had many-a day.

daz schœne ros ouch bî im lac
the beautiful horse also by him lay

zezerret und zebrochen;
torn and broken;

sus hêt er sich gerochen;
thus had it itself avenged;

ouch lac er dâ erstochen.
also lay it there stabbed.

The lady finds her husband, Moral, alive and his three companions dead, and has the dead carried home on horses to their wake; she offers a rich reward to anyone who can tell her whether the knight lives. A poor fisher and his wife find Gwigalois by the lake and strip him of his armor; the wife steals the girdle and would drown him, but her husband stops her. The poet praises noble women.

Als ich iu ê gesaget hân,
As I to-you before told have,

diu vrouwe diu dâ klagte ir man,
the lady who there lamented her husband,

der was ir gesinde komen;
to-her was her household come;

daz hêt ouch si zuo zir genomen
that had also she to her taken

und îlte dem pfade balde nâch.
and hastened the path quickly after.

zir gesellen was ir gâch
to-her companion was to-her hasty

daz si den tôt mit im dâ kür:
that she the death with him there should-choose:

dâ hêt si niht die werlt vür
there would-have she not the world for

genomen gar vür eigen;
taken wholly as own;

si mohte lîhte erzeigen
she might easily show

got ir herze und ir muot,
to-God her heart and her mind,

wand er übel unde guot
for he evil and good

erkennet ê dan ez geschiht;
knows before than it happens;

vor den werken er wol siht
before the works he well sees

swaz daz mensche tuon wil;
whatever the human do will;

sînem gewalte ist niht ze vil.
to-his power is nothing too much.

er reiner got bekande wol
the pure God knew well

daz ir herzę was triuwen vol,
that her heart was of-faith full,

wand im triuwe liep ist;
for to-him faith dear is;

dô liez er si in kurzer vrist
then let he her in short span

vinden ir vil lieben man.
find her very dear husband.

dâ hêt er wunder an getân
there had he wonder on done

daz er sîn leben ie behielt,
that he his life ever kept,

sô vaste sô der wurm vielt
so fast as the serpent folded

umb in sînen starken zagel.
about him its strong tail.

er druhte nider als der hagel
it pressed down as the hail

allez daz er begreif,
all that it gripped,

swâ der wurm hin sleif.
wherever the serpent thither crept.

owê der jæmerlîchen nôt!
alas the wretched distress!

die drîe gesellen wâren tôt
the three companions were dead

und lâgen bî im nâhen.
and lay by him near.

dô si die rîter sâhen
when they the knights saw

die ir mâge wâren,
who their kinsmen were,

dô begunden si gebâren
then began they to-behave

daz ez was zerbarmen.
that it was to-pity.

diu vrouwe mit beiden armen
the lady with both arms

ir gesellen umbe vie.
her companion about caught.

si sprach 'lieber herre, wie
she spoke 'dear lord, how

gehabt ir iuch? mugt ir genesen?'
fare you yourself? may you recover?'

'jâ, wil mir got gnædic wesen,'
'yes, (if)-will to-me God gracious be,'

sprach der halptôte man,
spoke the half-dead man,

'ân den ich niht genesen kan,
'without whom I not recover can,

sô trûwe ich wol mîn werde rât.
so trust I well of-me becomes counsel.

ein rîter mich erlediget hât
a knight me freed has

und dise tôten drîe;
and these dead three;

mit einer glävîe
with a lance

sluoc er in daz ichz sach;
slew he it so-that I-it saw;

grœzer liep mir nie geschach,
greater joy to-me never happened,

wand ich was et vil nâch tôt.'
for I was just very nearly dead.'

dô wart [dâ] vil manic ouge rôt
then became [there] very many-a eye red

vor vreuden und vor leide,
from joys and from sorrow,

wan si tâten beide,
for they did both,

si lachten unde weinden, —
they laughed and wept,—

mit vreuden si daz meinden —
with joys they that meant—

daz ir herre was genesen;
that their lord was recovered;

dâ wider muosens alle wesen
there against must-they all be

trûric von den tôten;
sad for the dead;

daz si sô unverschrôten
that they so unwounded

âne wer verlurn ir lîp,
without defense lost their life,

daz klaget man unde wîp.
that lamented man and woman.

deiswâr, si wâren klägelîch;
truly, they were lamentable;

geburt unde guotes rîch;
of-birth and of-goods rich;

des alles wâren si gelîch.
of-that all were they alike.

Diu vrouwe ir gesellen nam.
The lady her companion took.

als ez ir êren wol gezam,
as it to-her honors well befitted,

die tôten hiez si bâren
the dead bade she bier

die mit ir dâ wâren
who with her there were

ûf diu ros, und vuorte hin
upon the horses, and led thither

beidiu vlust und gewin:
both loss and gain:

die rîter hêt si dâ verlorn;
the knights had she there lost;

dâ wider hêt si ir erkorn
there against had she to-herself chosen

daz ze gwinne dazs ir man
that as gain that-she her husband

lendigen wider gwan
living back won

den der wurm hêt hin getragen.
whom the serpent had thither carried.

vor vreuden wolde si niht klagen.
for joys would she not lament.

die rîter kêrten balde
the knights turned quickly

mit jâmer ûz dem walde
with grief out-of the forest

gegẹn des herren veste.
toward the lord's fortress.

dâne was dehein gebreste
there was no lack

êren noch des guotes.
of-honors nor of-the goods.

diu vrouwe was ir muotes
the lady was of-her mind

rîche alsam der tac
rich as the day

daz daz hûs sô nâhen lac,
that the house so near lay,

in einer halben mîle.
at a half mile.

in vil kurzer wîle
in very short while

kômens vür daz bürgetor;
came-they before the castle-gate;

dâ was michel jâmer vor
there was great grief before

und von klage grôzer braht.
and of lament great noise.

innen des hêt diu naht
inside of-that had the night

den tac gar verdrungen.
the day wholly pushed-away.

si dûhte in wære gelungen
them seemed to-them were succeeded

daz sị ir herren brâhten wider.
that they their lord brought back.

von den rossen huop man nider
from the horses lifted one down

die drîe tôten sâ zehant;
the three dead straightway at-once;

vil grôze klage man dâ vant
very great lament one there found

under dem gesinde;
among the household;

ir jâmer wart vil swinde
their grief became very violent

die ir mâge wâren;
who their kinsmen were;

die tôten ûf den bâren
the dead upon the biers

truoc man zuo der wahte.
carried one to the wake.

salben manger slahte
ointments of-many kinds

hiez ir diu vrouwe gwinnen;
bade to-her the lady get;

sus vuorte si mit minnen
thus led she with love

ir geselḷen an guot gemach,
her companion to good comfort,

dâ im allez guot geschach.
where to-him all good happened.

diu vrouwe ersûfte unde sprach
the lady sighed and spoke

‘Her[re] geselle, du solt mir sagen
‘Lord companion, thou shalt me tell

ob der wurm sî erslagen.’
whether the serpent be slain.’

‘jâ, benamen, wand ich dạz sach
‘yes, assuredly, for I that saw

daz ein rîter durch in stach
that a knight through it stabbed

und daz sîn lût sô vaste schal
and that its sound so loudly resounded

daz ez durch den walt hal.
that it through the forest echoed.

ouch liez er uns vallen dâ;
also let it us fall there;

nâch dem rîter kêrter sâ;
after the knight turned-it at-once;

ich weiz wol si sint beidiu tôt.’
I know well they are both dead.’

‘owê danne! sô wær mîn nôt
‘alas then! so were my distress

und mîn klage geniuwet;
and my lament renewed;

sîn lîp mich immer riuwet,
his body me ever rues,

wand er iuch erlôste,
for he you freed,

herre, mir ze trôste.’
lord, for-me as comfort.’

si sprach ‘herre, hât er den lîp
she spoke ‘lord, has he the life

verloren umḅ mich armez wîp,
lost for me poor woman,

sô wær ich bezzer ungeborn.’
so were I better unborn.’

der herre sprach ‘lâ dînen zorn
the lord spoke ‘leave thy anger

und dîn ungemüete:
and thy ill-mood:

waz ob diu gotes güete
what if the God's goodness

in durch sîne triuwe ernert?'
him through his faith saves?'

diu vrouwe sprach 'der mir ervert
the lady spoke 'who for-me finds-out

ob der selbe rîter lebe,
whether the same knight lives,

der hât immer mîne gebe!'
he has ever my gift!'

si hêt an guote grôze kraft,
she had in goods great strength,

wande sị eine grâfschaft
for she a county

hêt in dem lande;
had in the land;

ir namen man erkande
her name one knew

in dem lande verre.
in the land far.

Morâl hiez der herre;
Moral was-called the lord;

an sîner [gẹ]bürte was er grôz,
in his [b]irth was he great,

vil wol der vürsten genôz;
very well of-the princes peer;

guoter bürge hêt er drî.
of-good castles had he three.

disiu lac sô nâhen bî
this lay so near by

dem sêwe daz er rehte vür
the lake that it right before

der vrouwen kemenâten tür
the lady's chamber's door

sluoc, als ez wint was.
struck, when it wind was.

dar ûz wâren an daz gras
there out-of were onto the grass

gegangen sehs vrouwen
gone six ladies

zuo dem sêwe schouwen.
to the lake to-look.

der mâne lûterlîche schein.
the moon clearly shone.

nu sâhen si wâ vor in ein
now saw they where before them a

schiffelîn vlôz ûf dem sê;
little-boat floated upon the lake;

dar an was niht liute mê
there on was no people more

niwan ein wîp und ir man;
except a woman and her husband;

den lac grôziu armuot an;
to-them lay great poverty on;

si hêten sehs kindelîn;
they had six little-children;

deste spâter muosens sîn
the later must-they be

nâch ir gewerfte ûf den sê;
after their trade upon the lake;

geltes hêten si niht mê
of-income had they nothing more

niwan ein schif daz si truoc;
except a boat which them carried;

als in ir dinc ze heile sluoc,
when to-them their affair to luck struck,

sô bejagten si vil kûme ir brôt;
so won they very scarcely their bread;

5300 der hunger tet in grôze nôt;
the hunger did them great distress;

ditze was gar ir genist.
this was wholly their sustenance.

nu lie si unser herre Krist
now let them our lord Christ

ze trôste dẹn armen kinden
for comfort to-the poor children

des selben nahtes vinden
of-the same night find

5305 dâ von ir armuot zergie.
there from their poverty dissolved.

got der was erbarmic ie;
God he was merciful ever;

daz erzeiget er an manger stet,
that showed he in many-a place,

wan swer mit lûterm gebet
for whoever with pure prayer

an in genâde suochet,
of him grace seeks,

5310 sîn barmunge in beruochet,
his mercy him provides-for,

als wirz an den buochen lesen;
as we-it in the books read;

ern welle uns genædic wesen,
unless-he will to-us gracious be,

unsẹr einer möhte niht genesen.
of-us one might not survive.

Sus liez er sich erbarmen
Thus let he himself pity

5315 die selben gotes armen
the same God's poor

und wîste sị zuo des sêwes stade,
and directed them to the lake's shore,

dâ der rîter mit dem rade
where the knight with the wheel

lac als ein tôter man;
lay as a dead man;

nâch grase wolde er ûz gân,
after grass would he out go,

und vant in alsô ligen dâ;
and found him so lie there;

sînem wîbe wincter sâ.
to-his wife beckoned-he at-once.

er sprach 'hœre her ze mir:
he spoke 'hear hither to me:

ein wunder wil ich zeigen dir;
a wonder will I show thee;

nu sich, hie lît ein tôter man;
now look, here lies a dead man;

der hât den besten harnasch an
he has the best harness on

den ich ie mê gesach.'
which I ever more saw.'

daz wîp zuo dem manne sprach
the woman to the man spoke

'geselle, lâ dîn grasen sîn;
'companion, let thy grass-cutting be;

hie mit suln unser kindelîn
here with shall our little-children

werden wol berâten.'
become well provided.'

ich sagiu wie sim tâten:
I tell-you how they-to-him did:

sîn houbt daz was gekêret nider;
his head it was turned down;

daz rihten si ze berge wider;
it set they to mountain back;

von bluote wârn die riemen
from blood were the straps

sô herte daz si niemen
so hard that them no-one

wol entstricken mohte;
well unlace might;

dô in daz niene tohte,
when to-them that not-at-all availed,

dô begunden sị si snîden.
then began they them to-cut.

daz er daz muose lîden
that he that must suffer

daz im ein man und ein wîp
that to-him a man and a woman

alsô entnacten sînen lîp,
so stripped his body,

daz möhte got erbarmen.
that might God pity.

si zugẹn im von den armen
they drew from-him from the arms

harnasch unde wâfenroc.
harness and surcoat.

sus lac er stille alsam ein stoc
thus lay he still as a stock

mit bluote gar berunnen;
with blood wholly run-over;

und hêt er sich versunnen,
and (if)-had he himself bethought,

sô wære ez im beliben dâ.
so were it to-him remained there.

daz wîp ersach den gürtel sâ;
the woman saw the girdle at-once;

der vreute harte sêre ir muot,
it rejoiced very sorely her mind,

wand er dûhte et si vil guot;
for it seemed just to-her very good;

vor dem manne si in stal;
from the man she it stole;

zesamne want sin als ein bal
together wound she-it as a ball

daz si ins niht sehen liez;
that she him-it not see let;

in ir biutel si in stiez.
into her purse she it thrust.

owê, daz ez ie geschach
alas, that it ever happened

daz dehein wîp sô swach
that any woman so base

den gürtel in ir hant genam!
the girdle into her hand took!

dem andern tâten si alsam;
to-the other did they likewise;

sus entnacten si in gar.
thus stripped they him wholly.

nu nemt, ir guoten liute, war
now take, you good people, heed

wie jæmerlîch der rîter lac:
how wretchedly the knight lay:

im was naht unde tac
to-him was night and day

allez ungemeine;
all unshared;

sîn leben daz was kleine;
his life it was small;

iedoch was im der lîp warm.
yet was to-him the body warm.

innen des zôch er den arm
inside of-that drew he the arm

nâher zuo dem lîbe baz;
nearer to the body better;

daz übel wîp ervorhte daz.
the evil woman feared that.

si sprach 'nu sich, lieber man,
she spoke 'now look, dear husband,

got hât wol zuns getân
God has well to-us done

mit dirre grôzen rîcheit;
with this great richness;

nu sî dir daz vür wâr geseit
now be to-thee that for true told

und lebt er unz an den tac,
and (if)-lives he until to the day,

daz ez uns wol geschaden mac;
that it to-us well harm may;

wir suln in baz tœten.'
we shall him better kill.'

'des soltu mich niht nœten'
'to-that shalt-thou me not force'

sprach der vil getriuwe man,
spoke the very faithful man,

'wand er doch niht genesen kan.'
'for he yet not recover can.'

'zwâre er tuot!' er sprach 'niht!'
'truly he does!' he spoke 'not!'

'woch, ez dûhte dich ie enwiht
'oh, it seemed to-thee ever naught

swaz ich guotes ie getet.'
whatever I of-good ever did.'

den rîter nam si an der stet
the knight took she in the place

bî dem hâre und zôch in
by the hair and drew him

gegẹn dem breiten sêwe hin
toward the broad lake thither

als sị in wolde ertrenken.
as-if she him would drown.

er sprach ‘mahtu gedenken,
he spoke ‘mayst-thou think,

sælic wîp, hin ze got?
blessed woman, thither to God?

nu was doch daz von sîm gebot
now was yet that by his command

daz daz schiffelîn hie her stiez.’
that the little-boat here hither landed.’

daz übel wîp er niht enliez
the evil woman he not let

dem rîter nemen sînen lîp.
from-the knight take his life.

ez ist ouch noch ein übel wîp
it is also yet an evil woman

wirser danne dehein man,
worse than any man,

wan si niht bedenken kan
for she not consider can

waz ir dar nâch kümftic sî.
what to-her there after to-come be.

diu edeln wîp diu sint vrî
the noble women they are free

alles übèls, daz weiz ich wol:
of-all evil, that know I well:

ir reiniu herzẹ sint güete vol.
their pure hearts are of-goodness full.

wol in der daz verdienen kan
well for-him who that earn can

daz in ein edliu vrouwe an
that him a noble lady on

niwan güetlîche siht;
only kindly looks;

erwirbet er dâ anders niht,
wins he there else nothing,

sô vreut ez in doch verre baz
so rejoices it him yet far better

danne ob er verdienet daz,
than if he earned that,

daz im ein unedel wîp
that to-him an ignoble woman

gæbe guot unde lîp:
should-give goods and body:

swem si vreude wellent geben
to-whom they joy will give

der mac wol deste gerner leben;
he may well the more-gladly live;

dâ von man die vrouwen sol
there from one the ladies shall

âne mâze haben wol;
without measure hold well;

ir lôn daz gît vil süezen zol.
their reward that gives very sweet toll.

Gazing on the stripped knight, the fisher's wife is moved by his beauty and pours water into him, which gives him a little strength, before the pair carry the armor to their hut, where one of the countess's ladies spies it through the fence. The countess, lamenting the knight who killed the dragon, orders the land to give thanks and recognizes the round table's arms from the time she saw Gawein at her father's house; she vows to find him, living or dead.

Ditz was dem hûs sô nâhen
This was to-the house so near

daz die vrouwen sâhen
that the ladies saw

den halsberc wîzen
the hauberk white

und den helm glîzen
and the helm glitter

gegẹn dem mânen dâ er schein.
toward the moon where it shone.

nu was der sehs vrouwen ein
now was of-the six ladies one

gegangen dar dâ si wol sach
gone thither where she well saw

swaz man dâ tet unde sprach.
whatever one there did and spoke.

ich hân oft vernomen daz,
I have often heard that,

daz man ûf dem wazzer baz
that one upon the water better

verrer hœrẹ dan anderswâ;
farther hears than elsewhere;

alsô tet diu vrouwe dâ.
so did the lady there.

si sach wol daz daz übel wîp
she saw well that the evil woman

dem rîtẹr entnacte sînen lîp
to-the knight stripped his body

alsô gar daz dehein
so wholly that no

vadem an sîm lîbe schein;
thread on his body appeared;

sus lac er sinne und guotes blôz;
thus lay he of-wits and of-goods bare;

ern schamte sich niht hâres grôz,
he shamed himself not of-hair's size,

wand ern hôrte noch ensach
for he-not heard nor saw

swaz im leides dâ geschach.
whatever to-him of-sorrow there happened.

nu sach daz herze übel wîp
now saw the heart evil woman

daz sîn wünniclîcher lîp
that his delightful body

sûberlîch und süeze was;
neat and sweet was;

vür in kniete sị ûf daz gras
before him knelt she onto the grass

und nam sînes lîbes war;
and took of-his body heed;

dô was er ze wunsche gar
then was he to ideal wholly

wol geschicket über al;
well formed over all;

sîn hâr was reit unde val,
his hair was curly and fallow,

sîn lîp wîz alsam ein snê.
his body white as a snow.

dô ẹrsûfte si und sprach ‘owê,
then sighed she and spoke ‘alas,

ditz ist der aller schœnste man
this is the of-all most-beautiful man

des ich künde ie gewan!
of-whom I knowledge ever won!

mich wundert waz im sî geschehen;
me wonders what to-him be happened;

in hât niwan der wurm ersehen;
him has only the serpent seen;

an des weide ist er komen;
on its pasture is he come;

der hât ouch im den lîp benomen,
it has also from-him the life taken,

wan swaz dem lendes widervert,
for whatever to-it living encounters,

daz ist benamen unernert.
that is assuredly unsaved.

ditz möhte wol ein vürste sîn;
this might well a prince be;

daz ist an sînem wâfen schîn,
that is in his arms seen,

wan daz ist von golde gar.’
for that is of gold wholly.’

mit ir goufen truoc si dar
with her cupped-hands carried she there

des wazzers unde gôz im in;
of-the water and poured to-him in;

vil lützel maht âne sin
very little might without wits

enpfie der edel rîter dâ.
received the noble knight there.

der gebûr rief dem wîbe sâ;
the peasant called to-the woman at-once;

er sprach 'nu trac den harnasch an:
he spoke 'now carry the harness on:

wir suln von dem walde dan
we shall from the forest away

balde varn ê ez tage.'
quickly fare before it dawns.'

dô schiet daz wîp mit grôzer klage
then parted the woman with great lament

von dem schœnen lîbe.
from the beautiful body.

dem vil übeln wîbe
to-the very evil woman

gap diu minne guoten muot,
gave the love good mind,

als si noch vil mangem tuot,
as it yet to-very many-a-one does,

wan si dem kucte sîn leben
for she to-him quickened his life

dem si den tôt ê wolde geben;
to-whom she the death before would give;

daz machet sîn vil süezer lîp.
that makes his very sweet body.

ich hœre sagen daz diu wîp
I hear say that the women

nâch grôzer ungüete
after great unkindness

vil snelle guot gemüete
very swiftly good mind

gevâhent von der minne;
catch from the love;

als ich mich versinne,
as I myself understand,

sô ist mit in daz beste leben
so is with them the best life

daz got der werlte hât gegeben.
which God to-the world has given.

diu reinen wîp sint alle guot;
the pure women are all good;

si gebent ofte guoten muot
they give often good spirit

dem der nâch ir willen tuot.
to-him who after their will does.

In disen sorgen vuorens dan,
In these cares fared-they away,

daz übel wîp und ir man,
the evil woman and her husband,

wie si ir vunt sô bræhten dar
how they their find so should-bring thither

daz sîn niemen würde gewar
that of-it no-one should-become aware

vür daz hûs in sînen glêt,
before the house into his hut,

den er dâ geziunet hêt
which he there fenced had

mit rôre und mit rîse.
with reed and with brushwood.

sus vluzzen si vil lîse
thus floated they very softly

unz si ze stade kâmen.
until they to shore came.

den harnasch si dô nâmen
the harness they then took

und truogen in in ir gemach.
and carried it into their dwelling.

der vrouwen einiu daz ersach,
of-the ladies one that saw,

wand ez was bî ir nâhen.
for it was by her near.

si begunde dar gâhen
she began thither to-hasten

und luoget durch den zûn dar in;
and peered through the fence there in;

dô sach si allen ir gewin:
then saw she all their gain:

helm, schilt und îsengwant;
helm, shield and iron-clothing;

ein vackel wart ûf gebrant;
a torch became up lit;

dâ bî kosten si ir vunt,
there by valued they their find,

der was bezzer danne tûsent pfunt,
which was better than thousand pounds,

von golde und von gesteine.
of gold and of gems.

ir angest diu was kleine:
their fear it was small:

si wândenz hân verborgen;
they believed-it to-have hidden;

dô kom ez in ze sorgen
then came it to-them to care

daz ez diu vrouwe hêt ersehen.
that it the lady had seen.

ein man sol ê vil rehte erspehen
a man shall before very rightly spy

daz sîn iemen werde gewar,
that of-it anyone become aware,

ê er mit tougen dingen dar
before he with secret things thither

komẹ dâz im geschaden mac;
come where to-him harm may;

ditz ist mîn sit des ich ie pflac.
this is my custom which I ever practiced.

diu vrouwe nam sîn rehte war
the lady took of-it right heed

unz si ersach diu wâfen gar.
until she saw the arms wholly.

dô kom ein hunt und bal si an;
then came a dog and barked her at;

zir gespiln vlôch si dan.
to-her playmates fled she away.

ditz was wol umbe mitte naht.
this was well about mid night.

der vrouwen einiu sprach ‘nu maht
of-the ladies one spoke ‘now mayst

dụ uns sagèn: wâ wær du hin?
thou us tell: where wert thou thither?

dunkẹt dich daz ein guot sin
seems to-thee that a good sense

daz du eine von uns gêst?
that thou alone from us goest?

ez kumt vil lîhtẹ daz du bestêst
it comes very easily that thou meetest

alle dîne unêre dâ.’
all thy dishonor there.’

si sprach ‘vrouwe, die rede lâ:
she spoke ‘lady, the speech leave:

ich was niwan zuo dem sê.’
I was only to the lake.’

‘nu sich, daz ez dir immer mê
‘now look, that it to-thee ever more

geschehe! dạz wil ich râten dir.
happen! that will I counsel thee.

ir vrouwen, ez ist zît daz wir
you ladies, it is time that we

gên ze kemenâten.'
go to chamber.'

vil lîse si dô trâten
very softly they then stepped

und giengen zuo ir vrouwen sâ.
and went to their lady at-once.

diu saz mit grôzer klage dâ
she sat with great lament there

bî ir vriunde; dér gehabt sich wol;
by her beloved; he fares himself well;

ír herze was ab leides vol
her heart was but of-sorrow full

umb den rîter, der sîn leben
for the knight, who his life

durch si dem tôde hêt gegeben.
for her to-the death had given.

si sprach 'ich sol den rîter klagen,
she spoke 'I shall the knight lament,

wand er durch mích hât erslagen
for he for me has slain

únd durch sîne manheit
and through his manhood

den wurm, der vil grôziu leit
the serpent, which very great sorrows

disem lande hât getân.
to-this land has done.

beidiu wîp unde man
both women and men

die sîn des tages immer vrô
they be of-the day ever glad

daz si unser herre alsô
that them our lord so

von dem wurme erledigęt hât;
from the serpent freed has;

ez ist mîn bet und ouch mîn rât,
it is my request and also my counsel,

als man sich des tagęs enstê,
when one himself of-the day understands,

daz daz lantvolc allez gê
that the land-folk all go

mit ir kriuze in den walt
with their cross into the forest

und loben in des gewalt
and praise him whose power

unde des vil süezer trôst
and whose very sweet comfort

si von dem tievel hât erlôst;
them from the devil has freed;

sô wil ouch ích den selben man
so will also I the same man

mit allen den die ich hân
with all those whom I have

suochen der ez hât getân.
seek who it has done.

Sîn ors was guot daz er reit;
His steed was good that he rode;

sîn schœner lîp [der] was gekleit
his beautiful body [it] was clad

mit einem halsbergę der was wîz;
with a hauberk which was white;

an sînem helmę lac grôzer vlîz
on his helm lay great diligence

von gesteine und von golde
of gems and of gold

geworht als er wolde;
wrought as he would;

enmitten ûf dem helme ein rat;
in-the-middle upon the helm a wheel;
daz lief umbe an der stat
that ran around in the place
als er buhurdierte;
when he jousted;
ein rîcher zobel [der] zierte
a rich sable [it] adorned
den liehten helm über al;
the bright helm over all;
von golde ein lîste niht ze smal
of gold a border not too narrow
lac im ob den ougen;
lay to-him above the eyes;
dar under was vil tougen
there under was very secretly
der helm lûter als ein glas;
the helm clear as a glass;
von genagèltem pfelle was
of studded brocade was
sîn wâfenroc, daz marhte ich wol;
his surcoat, that marked I well;
sîn schilt [was] swarz alsam ein kol,
his shield [was] black as a coal,
dar ûffe ein rat von golde.
there upon a wheel of gold.
ob ich wünschen solde
if I wish should
einen rîter im gelîchen,
a knight to-him alike,
alsô tugentrîchen,
so virtue-rich,
daz enmöhte weizgot niht geschehen;
that might God-knows not happen;

dâ von wil ich im jehen
there from will I to-him grant

[des] prîsés vür alle diech ie gesach:
[the] prize before all that-I ever saw:

er was ein krône und ein dach
he was a crown and a roof

rehter rîterschefte,
of-right knighthood,

wand er mit sîner krefte
for he with his strength

und mit sîner manheit
and with his manhood

allez disse landes leit
all this land's sorrow

ze vreuden hât gemachet,
to joys has made,

daz manic herze lachet
that many-a heart laughs

dem der übel wurm Pfetân
to-which the evil serpent Pfetan

ofte leide hât getân
often sorrow has done

an vriunden und an guote.
in friends and in goods.

nu haben in ir huote
now have in their keeping

alle die mich minnen
all who me love

daz si mir gewinnen
that they for-me win

doch den lîp, ob er nicht lebe;
yet the body, if he not live;

dar umb enpfâhet ir die gebe
there for receive you the gift

daz iu nie deheiner vart
that to-you never any time

alsô wol gelônet wart.
so well rewarded became.

michn triegen dannẹ die sinne mîn,
unless-me deceive then the wits mine,

sô mohtez wol ein rîter sîn
so might-it well a knight be

von der tavelrunde,
of the round-table,

wand ich zeiner stunde
for I at-one hour

der selben rîter einen sach
of-the same knights one saw

daz er wol hundert sper zebrach
that he well hundred spears broke

und zwelf vrume rîter vie;
and twelve valiant knights captured;

bezzer rîter wurden nie
better knights became never

dan die selben rîter sint;
than the same knights are;

bî den zîten was ich ein kint
by the times was I a child

dô ich den selben rîter sach,
when I the same knight saw,

wan diu rîterschaft geschach
for the jousting happened

vor mînes vater hûse;
before my father's house;

von dem künige Artûse
from the king Arthur

kom er dar durch rîterschaft;
came he thither for knighthood;

er hêt ellen unde kraft
he had valor and strength

und hiez der herre Gâwein;
and was-called the lord Gawein;

an sînem schilte was ein
on his shield was a

guldîn tavelrunde
golden round-table

geworht daz niemen kunde
wrought so-that no-one could

ein gewæfen dem gelîche
an armorial-bearing to-it like

vinden alsô rîche;
find so rich;

dar inne was, geloubet mirz,
there in was, believe me-it,

von krîdén gemâlt ein wîzer hirz
of chalk painted a white hart

ûf einem berge guldîn:
upon a mountain golden:

daz selbe wâfen daz was sîn
the same arms it was his

der die rîter alle vie;
who the knights all captured;

diu tavel diu dar umbe gie
the table which there about went

die nevuorte dehein man,
it carried no man,

als ichz vernomen hân,
as I-it heard have,

wan der mit grôzer arbeit
except who with great toil

und mit sîner manheit
and with his manhood

die stat hêt errungen;
the place had won;

swem sô was gelungen,
to-whomever so was succeeded,

der vuorte die tavelrunde
he carried the round-table

daz man dâ bî kunde
that one there by could

sehen unde wizzen daz
see and know that

er zer tavelrunde saz;
he at-the round-table sat;

daz selbe wâfen ich wol sach,
the same arms I well saw,

dô mir daz herzeleit geschach,
when to-me the heart-sorrow happened,

an des rîters schilte,
on the knight's shield,

den des niht bevilte
to-whom of-that nothing irked

ern rit durch mich in den tôt.
unless-he rode for me into the death.

ob ich den klage, des gêt mir nôt,
if I him lament, of-that goes to-me need,

wand er iuch, herre, erlôste
for he you, lord, freed

uns allen ze trôste.
to-us all as comfort.

ich hêt mich iuwer gar bewegen;
I had myself of-you wholly given-up;

niwan durch den selben degen
except for the same thane

ir wært benamẹn dâ tôt gelegen.'
you would-have assuredly there dead lain.'

XX · GWIGALOIS FOUND

Led by one of her maidens, the countess finds the armor in the fisher's hut and rewards him with land and a house; Wirnt argues with his own wit about wealth and worth. Gwigalois wakes naked and despairs of who he is, until he finds Larie's pouch. The countess comes by boat; ashamed, he flees, but she sends him her fur, which he puts on, and takes him home, where he is bathed and richly clothed.

Daz diu vrouwe hêt gesaget,
What the lady had told,

daz marhte diu vil schœne maget,
that marked the very beautiful maiden,

wan si daz ersehen hêt
for she that seen had

dâ man ez truoc in den glêt,
where one it carried into the hut,

helm, schilt und isengwant.
helm, shield and iron-clothing.

ûf stuont diu maget sâ zehant;
up stood the maiden straightway at-once;

vür ir vrouwen kniete sị dô
before her lady knelt she then

vil gezogenlîche und sprach alsô
very courteously and spoke so

'genâde, liebiu vrouwe mîn!
'grace, dear lady mine!

sol daz in iuwern hulden sîn
(if)-shall that in your favor be

und mac ich sîn geniezen,
and (if)-may I of-it enjoy,

sô wil ich iu entsliezen
so will I to-you unlock

ein verholnez mære,
a hidden tale,

dâ mit sich iuwer swære
there with itself your heaviness

vil lîhte verendet.
very easily ends.

vrouwe, nu sendet
lady, now send

mit mir einen boten dar.'
with me a messenger thither.'

diu vrouwe sprach 'nu sage, war?'
the lady spoke 'now say, whither?'

si sprach 'vrouwe, an eine stat
she spoke 'lady, to a place

dâ den helm und daz rat
where the helm and the wheel

hât verborgẹn ein armer man.
has hidden a poor man.

als ichz von iu vernomen hân,
as I-it from you heard have,

sô ist ez rehte' sprach diu maget
so is it right' spoke the maiden

'als ir uns allen hât gesaget.'
'as you to-us all have told.'

'sô dir got, hâst du wâr?'
'so-help thee God, hast thou truth?'

'zwâre, vrouwe, ich sach ez gar,
'truly, lady, I saw it wholly,

helm, schilt und îsengwant.’
helm, shield and iron-clothing.’

diu vrouwe sprach ‘ist dir bekant
the lady spoke ‘is to-thee known

ob der rîter ouch dâ sî?’
whether the knight also there be?’

‘vrouwe, ich sach dâ niemen bî,
‘lady, I saw there no-one by,

niwan ein wîp und ir man.’
except a woman and her husband.’

diu vrouwe sprach ‘nû wol dan,
the lady spoke ‘now well thence,

rîter unde vrouwen!
knights and ladies!

ich wil die wârheit schouwen
I will the truth behold

wâ der harnasch sî genomen.’
where the harness be taken.’

si sprach ‘vrouwe, ich sach si komen
she spoke ‘lady, I saw them come

in einem schiffe über ḍẹn sê.
in a boat over the lake.

ichn kan iu niht gesagen mê
I can to-you not tell more

wan daz sin truogen in den glêt
except that they-it carried into the hut

der bî uns hie nâhen stêt;
which by us here near stands;

des nam ich alles rehte war.’
of-that took I all right heed.’

diu vrouwe sprach ‘nu wîsẹ mich dar.’
the lady spoke ‘now direct me thither.’

sus stuont si ûf und gie dan.
thus stood she up and went away.

dô vunden si den armen man
then found they the poor man

sitzen bî sînem viure.
sit by his fire.

gnâde was im tiure,
grace was to-him scarce,

dar zuo sælde unde guot;
there to blessedness and goods;

ez hêt diu grôze armuot
it had the great poverty

zuo im gehûset in den glêt,
to him housed in the hut,

dâ selten vreude bî bestêt:
where seldom joy by stays:

diu armuot mit jâmer lît,
the poverty with grief lies,

diu rîcheit niwan vreude gît.
the richness only joy gives.

dô saz er und betrahte
then sat he and considered

wie er sô manger slahte
how he so many-a kind

gezierde von golde
adornment of gold

sô verkoufen solde
so sell should

daz sîn niemen würde gewar.
that of-it no-one should-become aware.

innen des dô kômen dar
inside of-that then came there

die vrouwen alle vür den glêt,
the ladies all before the hut,

den er vil vaste beslozzen hêt.
which he very fast locked had.

diu vrouwe sprach ‘tuo ûf die tür!’
the lady spoke ‘do open the door!’

der arme man sprach her vür
the poor man spoke hither out

‘herre got, waz sol daz sîn?’
‘lord God, what shall that be?’

diu vrouwe sprach ‘lâ mich dar în,
the lady spoke ‘let me there in,

od du verliust dînen lîp.’
or thou losest thy life.’

nu erkande sị wol daz arme wîp.
now knew her well the poor woman.

si sprach ‘ez ist mîn vrouwe.
she spoke ‘it is my lady.

lieber man, nu schouwe
dear husband, now look

wie wir sîn verrâten.’
how we are betrayed.’

die tür si ûf tâten
the door they up did

und erschrihten hârte sêrẹ dâ von,
and took-fright very sorely there from,

wan si wârn des ungewon
for they were of-that unaccustomed

daz si sô spâte iht gienge dâ.
that she so late aught should-go there.

diu vrouwe sprach zem manne sâ
the lady spoke to-the man at-once

‘lieber man, nu tuo durch mich,
‘dear man, now do for me,

dar umbe wil ich rîchen dich,
there for will I enrich thee,

eine sache der ich dich bit;
a thing which I thee beg;

dâ verdienstu benamen mit
there earnest-thou assuredly with

daz dir immer vrumen muoz.'
what to-thee ever profit must.'

der vrouwen viel er vür den vuoz
to-the lady fell he before the foot

und sprach 'gebietet über mich:
and spoke 'command over me:

swaz ir gebietet daz tuon ich.'
whatever you command that do I.'

diu vrouwe hiez in ûf stân.
the lady bade him up stand.

si sprach 'du solt mich sehen lân
she spoke 'thou shalt me see let

den schilt und daz îsengwant;
the shield and the iron-clothing;

dar umbe wil ich dir zehant
there for will I to-thee at-once

beidiu lîhen unde geben
both lend and give

daz du mit vreuden wol maht leben.'
that thou with joys well mayst live.'

des begunde er ir genâde sagen.
for-that began he to-her thanks to-say.

daz îsengwant wart getragen
the iron-clothing became carried

vür die edeln vrouwen dô.
before the noble lady then.

si sprach 'nu wolde ich wesen vrô
she spoke 'now would I be glad

der mir saget mære
of-him-who to-me tells tidings

wâ der rîter wære
where the knight were

des der harnasch ist gewesen;
whose the harness is been;

wesse ich ob er wære genesen,
should-know I whether he were recovered,

sô wær mîn leit verendet.' 5740
so were my sorrow ended.'

er sprach 'vrouwe, nu sendet
he spoke 'lady, now send

mit mir iuwern boten dan,
with me your messenger thence,

und welt ir michs geniezen lân,
and (if)-will you me-of-it enjoy let,

sô zeige ich iu den selben man.'
so show I to-you the same man.'

Diu vrouwe sprach 'entriuwen, jâ.' 5745
The lady spoke 'in-faith, yes.'

dô gap si im mit vreuden dâ
then gave she to-him with joys there

drîzic huobe zeigen
thirty hides as-own

und hiez im ûz zeigen
and bade to-him out show

daz beste hûs, als er si bat,
the best house, as he her begged,

daz inder stuont in der stat. 5750
which anywhere stood in the town.

sus gwan der arme rîchen muot,
thus won the poor-one rich spirit,

sælde, sin unde guot.
blessedness, wit and goods.

dô vrâget mich mîn kranker sin, —
then asks me my weak wit,—

des ich gar âne zwìvel bin —
of-which I wholly without doubt am—

'sag an, Wirnt, ist daz wâr:
'say on, Wirnt, is that true:

mac iemen âne guot gar
may anyone without goods wholly

al der werlt genæme sîn?'
to-all the world pleasing be?'

des antwurt ich dem sinne mîn
to-that answered I to-the wit mine

'zwâre, jâ! des dunket mich.'
'truly, yes! of-that seems to-me.'

'entriuwen, anders wæne ab ich;
'in-faith, otherwise believe but I;

waz vrumt dir lîp unde muot,
what avails thee body and mind,

bistu gar âne guot?'
(if)-art-thou wholly without goods?'

'nu hœre, daz wil ich dir sagen
'now hear, that will I to-thee tell

wie ich ir minne wil bejagen:
how I their love will win:

ich wil zuo den besten gên
I will to the best go

und wil mit mîner kunst begên
and will with my art achieve

und mit mînen zühten daz,
and with my breeding that,

daz ich in gevalle baz
that I to-them please better

danne ein guotes rîcher man
than a of-goods rich man

der deheiner slahte vuoge kan.'
who of-no kind propriety can.'

‘daz lâ sîn’ sprach der sin.
‘that let be’ spoke the wit.

‘sît ich dir sô nütze bin,
‘since I to-thee so useful am,

ich vrum dir als ich beste kan;
I profit thee as I best can;

dân gezwîvel nimmer an.’
there doubt never on.’

der rede wart ich harte vrô
of-the speech became I very glad

und behabte iedoch den strît alsô
and held yet the strife so

daz werder ist ein sinnic man
that worthier is a wise man

dem der in erkennen kan
to-him who him know can

danne ein man der allen rât
than a man who all provision

âne ganze sinne hât;
without whole wits has;

die rede ir mich niht liegen lât.
the speech you me not lie lets.

Der vrouwen was zer verte ger.
To-the lady was to-the journey eager.

si sprach ‘nu brinc balde her
she spoke ‘now bring quickly hither

ein schif daz uns alle trage.’
a boat which us all carries.’

diu naht entweich dem liehten tage,
the night gave-way to-the bright day,

wand er schône ûf gie.
for it beautifully up went.

den harnasch si zem hûse lie
the harness she to-the house left

ir rîtern und ir vrouwen;
to-her knights and her ladies;

dô begunden si in schouwen.
then began they it to-behold.

sus vuor si von dem hûse dan.
thus fared she from the house away.

Gwîgâlois, der arme man,
Gwigalois, the poor man,

der hêt sich ûf gerihtet.
he had himself up raised.

sîn hâr was ungeslihtet,
his hair was unsmoothed,

bluotic und zeworren.
bloody and tangled.

an einen dürren storren
against a dry stump

leinẹt er sich biz er bekam.
leaned he himself until he came-to.

michel wunder in des nam
great wonder him of-that took

wie er dar komen wære
how he there come were

gewandes alsô lære.
of-clothing so bare.

dô er sich alsô nacket sach,
when he himself so naked saw,

wider sich selben er dô sprach
to himself self he then spoke

‘Gwîgâlois, mahtu mir sagen:
‘Gwigalois, mayst-thou me tell:

waz wunders hât dich her getragen
what wonder has thee hither carried

od wie stêt dîn dinc alsô?
or how stands thy affair so?

deiswâr, gestuont dîn herze ie hô
truly, (if)-stood thy heart ever high

von minnen, ode wurd ie rîch,
from love, or wert ever rich,

dem bistu leider ungelîch.
to-that art-thou alas unlike.

allez mîn leben ist ein troum.
all my life is a dream.

ich bin gesetzẹt an disen boum
I am set to this tree

rehte als ich wilde sî.
right as-if I wild be.

herre got, nu wis mir bî!
lord God, now be me by!

des bit ich dich durch dînen tôt:
that beg I thee for thy death:

ichn kom nie in sô grôze nôt!
I came never into so great distress!

ob ich mich reht versinne,
if I myself rightly understand,

sô was diu küniginne
so was the queen

mîn muoter, von Syrîe
my mother, of Syria

diu süeze Flôrîe.
the sweet Florie.

mîn œheim hiez Jôram,
my uncle was-called Joram,

der ze Karidôl nam
who at Karidol took

den rîtern allen dâ ir prîs;
from-the knights all there their prize;

er was starc unde wîs.
he was strong and wise.

mîn vater hiez her Gâwein
my father was-called lord Gawein

und was der besten rîter ein,
and was of-the best knights one,

als mir der schœne man jach
as to-me the beautiful man said

den ich zer âventiure sach.
whom I at-the adventure saw.

Lârîe hiez diu vrouwe mîn;
Larie was-called the lady mine;

durch der schœne woldich sîn
for whose beauty would-I be

und durch ir lant tôt gelegen;
and for her land dead lain;

des hêt ich mich vil gar bewegen
of-that had I myself very wholly resolved

zer grôzen âventiure.
for-the great adventure.

nû bin ich ungehiure.
now am I monstrous.

waz touc diu rede? si ist enwiht.
what avails the speech? it is naught.

Gwîgâlois heize ich niht;
Gwigalois am-called I not;

ich bin et sus ein armman
I am just thus a poor-man

und sol bûwen disen tan
and shall cultivate this wood

als mîn vater hât getân.'
as my father has done.'

Sus hêt er verzwîvelt gar
Thus had he despaired wholly

daz sîner [gẹ]tæte iht wære wâr
that of-his [d]eeds aught were true

od daz er ie würde rîch,
or that he ever should-become rich,

wan dem saz er ungelîch.
for to-that sat he unlike.

vil schône schein der liehte tac.
very beautifully shone the bright day.

nu sach er wâ bî im lac
now saw he where by him lay

diu tiure tasche pfellîn
the precious pouch of-brocade

die im diu liebe vrouwe sîn
which to-him the dear lady his

gap ze stiure in den tôt;
gave as help into the death;

dar inne lac daz reine brôt
there in lay the pure bread

verborgen und der süeze bluot.
hidden and the sweet blossom.

des wart er vrô und dûhte in guot
of-that became he glad and seemed to-him good

daz im iht beliben was;
that to-him aught remained was;

nider greif er ûf daz gras
down grasped he onto the grass

und nam die taschen in die hant.
and took the pouch into the hand.

mit jâmer wart er dô ermant
with grief became he then reminded

der schœnen magt Lârîen.
of-the beautiful maiden Larie.

'owê' begunder schrîen
'alas' began-he to-cry

'daz ich ie wart geborn!
'that I ever became born!

nu hân ich guot und sin verlorn;
now have I goods and wit lost;

dar zuo lîd ich den gotes zorn.'
there to suffer I the God's anger.'

Ditz jæmerlîche wort 'owê'
This wretched word 'alas'

erhôrtẹ diu vrouwe ûf dem sê,
heard the lady upon the lake,

wand ẹz nâhen bî ir geschach.
for it near by her happened.

zuo dem manne si dô sprach
to the man she then spoke

'lieber man, du solt mir sagen,
'dear man, thou shalt me tell,

eine stimme hœre ich hie klagen,
a voice hear I here lament,

ob du wizzest wâ ez sî.'
whether thou knowest where it be.'

'vrouwe, ẹz ist hie nâhen bî,
'lady, it is here near by,

dâ ich den tôten rîter liez.'
where I the dead knight left.'

daz schif dô zuo dem stade stiez
the boat then to the shore pushed

in eine grôze wilde.
into a great wilderness.

dâ was dehein gevilde
there was no field

niwan berge unde tal,
except mountains and dale,

mit starken boumen über al
with strong trees over all

bewahsen und vervallen.
overgrown and fallen.

mit ir gesellen allen
with her companions all

diu vrouwe ûz dem schiffe gie.
the lady out-of the boat went.

vil grôzer jâmer si gevie
very great grief her seized

daz si den rîter alsô vant.
that she the knight so found.

diu scham hiez in sâ zehant
the shame bade him straightway at-once

von den liuten vliehen.
from the people flee.

dô begunde in nider ziehen
then began him down to-pull

sînes lîbes siecheit.
his body's sickness.

diu scham in dô des überstreit
the shame him then of-that overcame

daz er von den liuten lief.
that he from the people ran.

diu vrouwe im dô nâch rief.
the lady to-him then after called.

si sprach ‘herre, wâ welt ir hin?
she spoke ‘lord, where will you away?

gewunnet ir ie guoten sin,
(if)-won you ever good sense,

deiswâr, dem tuot ir ungelîch.
truly, to-that do you unlike.

nu kêret widèr: ich mache iuch rîch;
now turn back: I make you rich;

alles des ir an mich gert
of-all that you of me desire

des sît benamèn von mir gewert.
of-that be assuredly from me granted.

ich sihe wol daz iu wê tuot
I see well that to-you woe does

diu scham [und] iuwer armuot
the shame [and] your poverty

und iuwers lîbes siecheit.
and your body's sickness.

ich wil mit triuwen iuwer leit
I will with faith your sorrow

wenden, swâ ich mac, zehant.
avert, wherever I may, at-once.

iuwer schœne îsengwant
your beautiful iron-clothing

daz ist gevüeret von dem wege;
that is carried from the way;

ich hân ez allèz in mîner pflege,
I have it all in my care,

als ich iuz behalten hân.
as I to-you-it kept have.

sît got sô wol hât getân
since God so well has done

daz ir, herrè, genesen sît,
that you, lord, recovered are,

ir sult ez haben âne strît.
you shall it have without strife.

nu kêret widèr, rîter guot,
now turn back, knight good,

wand iuwer tugenthafter muot
for your virtuous mind

und iuwer grôziu manheit
and your great manhood

die nâmen mir mîn herzeleit
they took from-me my heart-sorrow

und gâben mir vreude wider.
and gave me joy back.

dô ich mit grôzem jâmer nider
when I with great grief down

was gevallen ûf daz gras,
was fallen onto the grass,

als mir mîn vriunt gezücket was,
when to-me my beloved snatched was,

dô kômet ir und trôstẹt mich.
then came you and comforted me.

diu selbe vrouwe bin ich
the same lady am I

dię ir dâ vundèt mit grôzer klage.
whom you there found with great lament.

ir sult geloubèn daz ich iu sage:
you shall believe what I to-you say:

ich tuon allez daz ir welt.'
I do all that you will.'

alrêrst bekande sich der helt
only-then knew himself the hero

und gedâhte ir leides harte wol.
and remembered her sorrow very well.

diu scham treip in in ein hol
the shame drove him into a hole

dâ vor grôz gerüne was;
where before great undergrowth was;

beidiu mies unde gras
both moss and grass

brach er vür sînen lîp.
broke he before his body.

dô rief im abèr daz reine wîp,
then called to-him again the pure woman,

wan der walt was sô grôz
for the forest was so great

daz si ir suochens niht genôz.
that she of-her searching not enjoyed.

si sprach 'herre, sît ir guot
she spoke 'lord, (if)-are you good

od gwunnet ir ie guoten muot
or won you ever good spirit

von deheinem reinen wîbe,
from any pure woman,

sô lât iuwerm lîbe
so let to-your body

bieten gemach und êre.'
offer comfort and honor.'

dône barc er sich niht mêre;
then hid he himself not more;

er lie sich alsô nacket sehen.
he let himself so naked see.

daz wære weizgot niht geschehen,
that were God-knows not happened,

wan durch sîne vrouwen.
except for his lady.

alsus liez er sich schouwen:
thus let he himself behold:

die sîte kêrte er gegẹn ir dar,
the side turned he toward her thither,

daz si dâ bî næme war
that she there by should-take heed

daz im diu scham wê tet.
that to-him the shame woe did.

einen pelz zôch si an der stet
a fur drew she in the place

ab ir, der was lûter grâ;
off her, which was pure gray;

den sande si dem rîter dâ;
it sent she to-the knight there;

hie mit kleite er sich sâ.
here with clothed he himself at-once.

Als er bedahte sînen lîp,
When he covered his body,

dô gie gegẹn im daz reine wîp.
then went toward him the pure woman.

vil minniclîch enpfie si in
very lovingly received she him

und leite in an daz schif hin.
and led him to the boat thither.

si sprach ‘lieber herre mîn,
she spoke ‘dear lord mine,

ir sult mir willekomen sîn
you shall to-me welcome be

hie in disem lande.
here in this land.

ich weiz wol iu ist ande
I know well to-you is grievous

iuwer grôziu armuot;
your great poverty;

gehabt iuch wol: ich gibiu guot
fare you well: I give-you goods

und schaffe iu solhen gemach
and provide to-you such comfort

daz iu nie baz geschach,
that to-you never better happened,

ob irz von mir nemen welt.'
if you-it from me take will.'

'vil gerne, vrouwe' sprach der helt.
'very gladly, lady' spoke the hero.

im was gemaches harte nôt.
to-him was of-comfort very need.

in hêt vil nâch der bitter tôt
him had very nearly the bitter death

mit sîner kraft gezücket hin.
with its strength snatched away.

dô hêt er maht unde sin,
then had he might and wit,

sô daz er sich wol versan.
so that he himself well bethought.

mit der vrouwen vuor er dan
with the lady fared he away

ûf ir hûs an guot gemach,
up-to her house to good comfort,

dâ im allez guot geschach.
where to-him all good happened.

der wirt selbe gegęn im gie.
the host self toward him went.

vil minniclîche er in enpfie,
very lovingly he him received,

dar nâch daz liut über al.
there after the people over all.

sich huop dâ ein vil grôzer schal
itself raised there a very great clamor

und gedranc von dem gesinde.
and throng from the household.

diu wîp mit ir kinde
the women with their children

diu liefen ûz der stat dar
they ran out-of the town thither

und nâmen des rîters war,
and took of-the knight heed,

der den wurm hêt erslagen.
who the serpent had slain.

si begunden im genâde sagen
they began to-him thanks to-say

und danken sîner manheit.
and to-thank his manhood.

dô badet man ịn, und wart gekleit
then bathed one him, and became clothed

dar nâch mit sô rîcher wât
there after with so rich clothing

daz diu werlt niht bezzers hât.
that the world nothing better has.

diu vrouwe hiez in mit ir gân
the lady bade him with her go

in eine kemenâten dan,
into a chamber away,

dâ im allez guot geschach.
where to-him all good happened.

an disen dingen er wol sach
in these things he well saw

daz si ịn mit triuwen meinde
that she him with faith meant

als si im wol bescheinde,
as she to-him well showed,

wan si ịn mit willen werte
for she him with will granted

swes er an si gerte.
whatever he of her desired.

ouch was er sô bescheiden daz
also was he so discreet that

er niht gerte vürbaz
he not desired further

noch von niemen niht des nam
nor from no-one nothing of-that took

des im ze nemen niht gezam;
which to-him to take not befitted;

des was geprîset ie sîn nam.
of-that was praised ever his name.